Tutorials of Visual Graphic Communication Programs for Interior Design

YONGYEON CHO

IOWA STATE UNIVERSITY DIGITAL PRESS AMES, IOWA

\odot () \otimes

Tutorials of Visual Graphic Communication Programs for Interior Design by Yongyeon Cho is licensed under a <u>Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0</u> <u>International License</u>, except where otherwise noted.

You are free to copy, share, adapt, remix, transform, and build upon the material as long as you follow the terms of the license: https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Suggested Citation: Cho, Yongyeon. (2021). Tutorials of Visual Graphic Communication Programs for Interior Design. Ames, IA: Iowa State University Digital Press. DOI: <u>https://doi.org/10.31274/isudp.2020.60</u>

Published by the Iowa State University Digital Press, a division of the University Library at Iowa State University.

701 Morrill Rd, Ames, IA 50011, USA

E-mail: digipress@iastate.edu

Contents

Introduction	1
Part One. AutoCAD	
Chapter 1. Introduction of AutoCAD	5
Chapter 2. Draw floor plans	25
Chapter 3. Create dimensions and components	37
Chapter 4. Draw elevation and sections	60
Chapter 5. Draw ceiling plans	75
Chapter 6. Set sheets	88
Chapter 7. Symbols and prints	99
Part Two. Revit	
Chapter 8 Introduction to Revit	108

Chapter 8. Introduction to Kevit	108
Chapter 9. Create a site	119
Chapter 10. Set grids, levels, dimensions, & building columns	141
Chapter 11. Add/edit beams, walls, & curtain walls	155
Chapter 12. Understand visibility settings, add/edit floor & ceilings	170
Chapter 13. Add/edit stairs, rails, & roof	182
Chapter 14. Add/edit windows, doors, lighting fixtures, furniture, tags, & sheets	200
Chapter 15. Add/edit model-in-place components & edit family	216
Chapter 16. Add/edit elevation, section, detail, text, annotation, & rooms	227
Chapter 17. Add/edit views, lighting, & materials	243
Chapter 18. Create Revit rendering, Revit clouding rendering	260

Part Three. Enscape

Chapter 19. Introduction to Enscape	273
<u>Chapter 20. Edit model & materials</u>	284
Chapter 21. Edit lighting and create a video	294
Chapter 22. Edit render outputs	303
Appendix: Ancillaries	309

Introduction

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=4

This Open Educational Resource is for the beginning level of both interior design and architecture students who learn computer graphic communication software.

The author created and developed a total of 22 tutorials to teach three computer graphic applications, AutoCAD, Revit, and Enscape. AutoCAD is an essential computer drafting software which is 2D drawing software. Revit is a Building Information Modeling software, which is 3D based modeling software. Lastly, Enscape is a real-time rendering and virtual reality plug-in for users' 4D experiences. These three applications are the primary programs that design students should utilize for his/her design projects throughout an individual's academic life in the College of Design and the student's future jobs.

Many design students rely on the instructor's demonstrations during lectures for acquiring technical knowledge. Additionally, design students have tutorials from multiple resources such as textbooks and videos from that internet that are informed by the instructors or the students' own search results. Typically, a textbook deals with only an application. And videos from the internet include unnecessary information like commercial advertisements. These separated sources of information often cause a student's confusion and frustration. For these reasons, the book provides a unified format of tutorials to cover the three applications. The tutorials consist of both text and image-based tutorials as the primary resource and video-based tutorials as the supplemental materials.

An instructor will demonstrate using the text and image-based tutorials, and share the link for the video-based tutorials after the lectures for student's practice. This book provides two learning experiences. One is to create an architectural model by following the instructions provided in this book. The second is to create your own model by referencing the information from this book.

Students learning outcomes

The tutorials in this book may have positive impacts on students' learning by 1) providing unified lecture contents to learn the main three graphic communication applications for design students, 2) offering free and readily available materials, 3) supporting two different formats of tutorials for different types of learner.

Affordability of the teaching contents

This bool help students' finance because the materials are free with Creative Common. Whenever students need, the tutorials will be available without paying for the textbook. Currently, the course uses a textbook for only one application, Revit. It is because of the price of the textbook, and also the amount of information that the course covers. If the course relay on textbooks, students in the course should purchase two books, one for AutoCAD and the other for Revit, a textbook for Enscape is not published yet.

Pedagogical strategies

The author is developing hybrid tutorials to support diverse student's learning styles. Some students tend to learn lecture contents through readings, some students learn lecture contents more effectively with video and audio, and some students

1 | Introduction

learn lecture contents with in-person coaches. The book implements two types of tutorials to cover visual learners and auditory learners. The tutorials also can be used for new instructors to teach similar lecture contents in the future. The instructors can investigate their time to prepare to deliver the lecture contents rather than to create the lecture contents.

PART ONE. AUTOCAD

Chapter 1. Introduction of AutoCAD

- What is the application & 4 different AutoCAD
- How to install the application
- Understand AutoCAD interface Ribbon, Panels, Model space, Layout tabs, Status bar, & Properties
- AutoCAD setup tips Options, Unites, Workspace
- Types and structure of drawings in Auto CAD- Floor plan, RCP, Elevation, Section, & Details
- Input commands and understand different selections
- Understand basic drawing tools- Origin, Line, Move, Rotate, Copy
- Attach image/PDF/CAD and Adjust the scale
- Set the project folder, Save the file, and backups

Chapter 2. Draw Floor Plans

- Understand Layers Name, Line type, Thickness, & Color
- Draw centerlines Line, Ortho, & Offest
- Draw exterior/interior walls, floor, millwork & openings Polyline, Spline, Circle, Rectecgul, Object Snap, Mirror, Fillet, Trim, Extend, Array, & Match Properties

Chapter 3. Create Dimensions and Components

- Add/Edit dimensions (in model space) Dim, & Dimension style
- Add/Edit blocks from AutoCAD Tool Palette & Other sources Door, Window, Column, Plumbing, Furniture & Equipment
- **Create custom blocks** *Custom furniture*

Chapter 4. Draw Elevations and Sections

- Draw a section
- Draw an elevation from Floor plan
- Add/Edit Text & Annotation (in model space) MText, Text style, M leader, & Multileader Style

Chapter 5. Draw Ceiling Plans

- Draw Ceiling Plans from Floor plan
- Add/Edit Hatch
- Create Legends

Chapter 6. Set Sheets

- Understand the Model space and Paper spaces
- Set a new layout Page layout, & Plot styles
- Set views in Paper spaces Defpoints, Scaling
- Add/Edit/Draw a titleblock

Chapter 7. Symbols and prints

- Add/Edit symbols in Paper spaces drawing title, elevation symbol and section letters, north arrow
- Printing

Chapter 1. Introduction of AutoCAD

Session Objectives

Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

- (CO 1) Understand what is the application & 4 different AutoCAD
- (CO 2) Install the application on your computer
- (CO 3) Understand the User Interface of AutoCAD Ribbon, Panels, Model space, Layout tabs, Status bar, & Properties
- (CO 4) Understand AutoCAD setup tips Options, Units, Workspace
- (CO 5) Understand the types and structure of drawings in Auto CAD- Floor plan, RCP, Elevation, Section, & Details
- (CO 6) Input commands and understand different selections
- (CO 7) Understand basic drawing tools- Origin, Rectangle
- (CO 8) Attach image/PDF/CAD and adjust the scale
- (CO 9) Set the project folder, Save the file, and backups

Session Highlights

At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Decture Contents

(COI) Understand what is the application & 4 different AutoCAD

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=5

About CAD

Computer-Aided Design(CAD) or Computer-Aided Design and Drafting (CADD) can be defined as using computer systems to assist in the creation, modification, analysis, or optimization of a design. (Narayan, 2008)

CAD software is used to increase the productivity of the designer, improve the quality of design, improve communications through documentation, and create a database for manufacturing. (Narayan, 2008)



image credit: Shaan Hurley, AutoCAD R14 Welcome Sample DWG, Flicker

CAD is an important industrial art extensively used in many applications, including automotive, shipbuilding, and aerospace industries, industrial and architectural design, prosthetics, and many more. (Pottmann, and et al., 2007)

About AutoCAD

AutoCAD is an industry-leading commercial CAD software.

AutoCAD is used by AEC(Architecture, Engineer, and Construction) to generate and optimize 2D and 3D designs. AutoCAD is a widely used software program that can help you draft construction documentation, explore design ideas, visualize concepts through photorealistic renderings, and simulate how a design performs in the real world. (Autodesk)

AutoCAD was first released in December 1982 as a desktop app. In 2010, AutoCAD was released as a mobile- and web app, marketed as AutoCAD 360. (Autodesk and AutoCAD)

Four AutoCAD products for AEC

- AutoCAD: the original version of AutoCAD. This version can use architects, project managers, engineers, graphic designers, city planners, and other professionals.
- AutoCAD Architecture: a version of Autodesk's flagship product, AutoCAD, with tools and functions specially suited to architecture work. This software supports dynamic elements (wall, door, windows, and other architectural elements) and automatically updating Spaces and Areas for calculations of sqft.
- AutoCAD LT: the lower-cost version of AutoCAD, with reduced capabilities (No 3D, No Network Licensing, No management tools, and more).
- AutoCAD 360: an account-based mobile and web application enabling registered users to view, edit, and share AutoCAD files via a mobile device and web using a limited AutoCAD feature set and using cloud-stored drawing files.

(CO₂) How to install the application

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=5

Install AutoCAD

This version is for educational purposes only.

You must know your system requirement first before you install the application. If you do not know your system use, please find the information <u>here</u>.

- [STEP 01] Go to https://www.autodesk.com/education/free-software/autocad on your Windows side, open a web browser (Chrome is recommended because the instructor tested).
- [STEP 02] Click [CREATE ACCOUNT] if you do not have one. If you already have an Autodesk account, please sign in by clicking [SIGN IN].

- [STEP 03] Select an appropriate version of AutoCAD, your system, and language.
- [STEP 04] Click [INSTALL].
- [STEP 05] Accept the license and services agreement.
- [STEP 06] You will receive an email from Autodesk for the license information (Product key and Serial Number). It will be needed for the activation process.
- [STEP 07] Click the downloaded installation file to install. The installation will take a while.
- [STEP 08] After installation, the software will require activation. Please use the license information.

(CO₃) Understand AutoCAD interface – Ribbon, Panels, Model space, Layout tabs, Status bar, & Properties

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=5

Once you open AutoCAD by double-clicking the AutoCAD icon, you can create a new drawing by clicking the [START DRAWING] icon on the first page of the AutoCAD application.



You also can select a different template by clicking [TEMPLATES] under start drawing. The default setting is [acad.dwt]

Your recent documents will show in the middle of the first page. You also can click to open the recent documents.



For the tutorial provided by Autodesk, you can click [LEARN]. I recommend you watch the Getting Started Videos.

Once you click [START DRAWING], you will see this user interface below. [please remember the names]



- Application menu: New, open, save, import, export, print
- Quick access toolbar: User can save tools that they often use
- Info Center: Ask a question, find out answers from Autodesk community
- Ribbon: Main menus Home, Insert, Annotate, View, Manage
- Ribbon tab
- Ribbon view: User can minimize and maximize the ribbon

- File tab: Navigate files and create and open files
- Drawing area/graphic area: Main drawing space
- View cube: User can change the view, top, front, 3D, or more
- Navigation bar: Zoom in and out, pan, zoon to all, and more
- Command box: Can type commands and see the previous commands
- Layout tab: Can see model space and print spaces
- Status bar: Can set grid, snaps, scales, and more

Please see this detailed user interface that is provided by Autodesk

(CO₄) AutoCAD setup tips – Options, Unites, Workspace

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=5

Before you start your drafting, it is recommended to set your workspace and options as you wish. Take some time and experiment with the settings, as shown below. You can change settings at any time.

Below are the instructor's recommended setups based on more than 10-years of drafting experience.

OPTIONS

- [STEP 01] Click [APPLICATION MENU] and then Click [OPTIONS], or type [options] on the command box, and Enter key
- [STEP 02] You will see the Option window
- [STEP 03] Click Display tab > Change Color theme from dark to light
- [STEP 04] Find Crosshair size on the Display tab > Change the value from 5 to 100

le <mark>s Display Ope</mark> n and Save Plot and Publish System User	r Preferences Drafting 3D Modeling Selection Profiles
Window Elements Color theme: Light Display scroll bars in drawing window Use large buttons for Toolbars Resize ribbon icons to standard sizes Show ToolTips 1.000 Number of seconds before display Show shortcut keys in ToolTips 2.000 Number of seconds to delay Show rollover ToolTips 2.000 Number of seconds to delay Show rollover ToolTips Colors Fonts Layout elements Display Layout and Model tabs Display printable area Display paper background	Display resolution Image: Index of the second of
 Display paper shadow Show Page Setup Manager for new layouts Create viewport in new layouts 	70

• [STEP 05] Find [Colors] and change Uniform background to Black> Click [Apply & Close]

Di Context:	Interface element:	Color:	
2D model space	Uniform background	Black	~
Vindow 3D parallel projection Color th 3D perspective projection	Viewport control Grid major lines	Tint for X, Y,	Z
Block editor Command line	Grid minor lines Grid axis lines	Restore curr	ent element
Disp Plot preview	2d Autosnap marker 3d Autosnap marker	Restore curr	ent context
⊒ Resi	Dynamic dimension lines Rubber-band line	Restore a	l contexts
Sho	Drafting tool tip Drafting tool tip contour		
	Control vertices hull	Restore da	assic colors
	m h		
Z Sho			
⊇ Disp			
⊇ Disp			
 ☑ Disp ☑ Disp ☑ Disp ☑ Disp ☑ Disp 			
 ☑ Disp ☑ Disp ☑ Disp ☑ Disp ☑ Disp ☑ Disp 			
 ☑ Disp ☑ Di			
 ☑ Disp ☑ Sho 	2280 6.0884		

- [STEP 06] Click the Draftingtab > Change the aperture size make slightly smaller
- [STEP 07] Click the Selection tab and uncheck[allow the press and drag for lasso] > Click [OK] to close the option

rent profile: < <unnamed profile="">></unnamed>	Current drawing: Drawing1.dwg
iles Display Open and Save Plot and Publish System	User Preferences Drafting 3D Modeling Selection Profiles
Pickbox size	Grip size
Selection modes	Grips Grip <u>C</u> olors
Use Shift to add to selection	Show gips
✓ Object grouping	Show grips within blocks
Associati <u>v</u> e Hatch	Show grip tips
Implied windowing	Show dynamic grip menu
Allow press and drag on object	Allow Ctrl+cycling behavior
Allow press and drag for Lasso	Show single grip on groups
Window selection method:	
Both - Automatic detection 🗸 🗸	100 Object selection limit for display of grips
25000 Object limit for Properties palette	
Selection effect color:	Preview Selection preview
Default	When a command is active
	When no command is active
Ribbon options	Visual Effect Settings
Contextual Tab States	
	Tel Liobertà hieview

UNITS

- [STEP 01] Click [APPLICATION MENU] > click [DRAWING UNITS] > click [UNITS] or, Type [units] on the command box > Enter key
- [STEP 02] Confirm the units are right for your project

Below snap is an image of a typical setting for the Imperial system.

Length		Angle	
Ambitostural		Decimal Decrease	
Precision:		Precision:	
0'-0 1/16"	~	0	~
		Clockwise	
Insertion scale			
Insertion scale Units to scale insert	ed content:		
Insertion scale Units to scale insert Inches	ed content:		
Insertion scale Units to scale insert Inches Sample Output 1 1/2",2",0" 3"<45,0"	ed content:		
Insertion scale Units to scale insert Inches Sample Output 1 1/2",2",0" 3"<45,0" Lighting	ed content:		
Insertion scale Units to scale insert Inches Sample Output 1 1/2".2",0" 3"<45.0" Lighting Units for specifying t	ed content:	of lighting:	

Below snap is an image of a typical setting for the Metric system.

Length	Angle
<u>T</u> ype:	Туре:
Decimal	 Decimal Degrees
Precision:	Precision:
0	v 0 v
Insertion scale	
Insertion scale Units to scale inserted conte	nt:
Insertion scale Units to scale inserted conte Millimeters	nt:
Insertion scale Units to scale inserted conte Millimeters Sample Output 2,2,0 3<45,0	nt:
Insertion scale Units to scale inserted conte Millimeters Sample Output 2,2,0 3<45,0 Lighting	nt:
Insertion scale Units to scale inserted conte Millimeters Sample Output 2,2,0 3<45,0 Lighting Units for specifying the inten	nt:

PROPERTIES

• [STEP 01] Click the small arrow under Properties on Home Ribbon to open the Properties panel



- [STEP 02] Or press [Ctrl+1] on your keyboard to open the Properties panel
- [STEP 03] Place the panel on your left side of the workspace
- [STEP 04] Click [Layer Properties] on Home Ribbon to open Layer properties



[STEP 05] Place the panel on your left side of the workspace and click the arrow to hide the panel
 LAYER PROPERTIES MANAGER

The interface after setting changes

	₿ ¢4 · · · •		and the second					▶ Type a keyword or phrase	88 & Sign In	· 2 & · () ·	- 8
Polyline Circle Arc	→ + Move ↓ ↓ + + Move ↓ ↓ + + + ↓ ↓ + + ↓ ↓ ↓ + ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ + ↓ ↓ ↓	Rotate 📡 Trim + 🟒 Mirror (Fillet + 🗇 Scale 🔡 Array - 🧲	A Dimension Cleader	Layer Properties 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6,	Make Current Match Layer	Create Edit Mat Edit Attributes - Proper	bh 📰 — ByLayer ties 📰 — ByLayer	Group	the Perte D Base		
Draw +		Modify +	Annotation *	Layers +		Block *	Properties *	» Groups + Utilities	 Clipboard View * 		
itart Drawi	sg1" × +										
PROPERTIES											- 0 >
No selection	- et +	*									M
General											N.
Color	D ByLaver										and the local division of the local division
Laver	0									w	TOP
Linebine	Bdawr										1000
Linet me scale	1,0000										
Linewight	Bulaver										S
Transnarency	ByLaver										
Thickness	0"										WCS
20 Manufication											
Scr visualization	D.J. mark										
Material	DyLayer										
Plot style		*									
Plot style	ByCular										
Plot style table	None										
Plot table attached to	Model										1
Plot table type	Not available										1
View		*									
Ceriter X	2'-3*										
Center Y	11.1/4*										1.0
Center Z	0"										1
Height	2'-0 9/16"										
Width	4-63/8										
Misc		*									
Annotation scale	1:1										
UCS icon On	Yes										
UCS icon at origin	Yes										
UCS per viewport	Yes										
UCSName											
Visual Style	2D Wireframe										
coon ope	and the state of t										
		~									
		X		Committee of the second se					The state of the s		
		a—^		X / ET Type a com	mond		the same state of the same state of the	States of the local division of the local di	*		
del Lauratt Laurat	1.4							MODEL (##) 111		16 1 11 W 1	10. 101 mm
anyour alyour								MODEL ## ::: * -		X Y II . 8 . 4	20 17 13

(CO₅) Types and structure of drawings in Auto CAD- Floor plan, RCP, Elevation, Section, & Details

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=5

Architects and Designers use AutoCAD in slightly different ways. It is different from firm to firm and depending on who draws the drawing. Moreover, it depends on what phase of the design you are in.

Many design firms never use layout tabs. Some firms use AutoCAD only for Schematic Design purposes. Some designers use this application for presentation purposes too.

However, in this course, we are targeting to use all essential functions to generate a Construction Document set.

Below is a typical - fundamental - Construction Document set for an interior design project

- Cover sheet + general project information
- Floor plans
- Furniture + Finish plans
- Ceiling plans
- Elevations + Sections
- Details

For detailed information about the types of drawings, please refer

Kilmer, W. Otie, and Kilmer, Rosemary. Construction Drawings and Details / W. Otie Kilmer and Rosemary Kilmer. Third ed. 2016. Print.

(CO6) Input commands and understand different selections

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=5

To draw in AutoCAD, you must understand different types of command input

- Use icons on Ribbon (Basic level)
 e.g. Click [Home] ribbon > Click [Text]
- Use the commands box (Moderate level)
 e.g. Click [command box] > Type MULTILINETEXT > Enter key
- Use Shortcuts (Advanced level) Please practice to improve the speed of work and productivity. e.g., Type [MT] on a keyboard (mouse can be located anywhere, it can be lower case) > Enter

Often use shortcuts by the instructor [please remember the list of shortcuts]

- [1] line
- [pl] polyline
- [mt] multiline text
- [m] move
- [co] copy
- [ro] rotate
- [z] zoom and [a] all
- [b] block
- [s] stretch
- [x] explode
- [ex] extend
- [c] circle
- [re] regen (refresh)
- [h] hatch
- [o] offset
- F3 osnap
- F8 ortho

Detailed information can be found in this link https://www.autodesk.com/shortcuts/autocad

Three types of selections

one click - individual objects

- window selection (blue) drag/click from left-top to right bottom to select all objects that are enclosed in the selection
- 17 | AutoCAD Session 1

rectangle.

	Garantia Ma	Have And Min Others Investor Description	+ Type a Reynologi phrase 🗛 🖉 Sign In 🔹 🗑 💩 - 🕐 - 🕳
Polyline Circle Arc		table y Collect Anto-me Consolver Digital lines - Partners Apple Di table ¥ time - A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	r Coroup No. Measure A Paste D Bare
Draw *		Aodily = Annotation = Layers = Block = Properties =	 Groups * Utilities * Clipboard View * x
Start Drawi	ng1* X +		
PROPERTIES			- 9
and and and an			
No selection	* 1 0 4		N N
General			
Color	D ByLayer		
Layer	0		W IOP
Linetype	- ByCayer		
Linetype scale	1.0000		e
Lineweight			3
transparency	by typer		
thickness	0	والمتركبة والمتركبة والمترجب والموار والمتركبة والمتحد والمتحد والمتحد والمحد والمحد والمحد والمحد والمحد والم	
SU Visualization			
Material	ByLayer.		
Plot style			
Plot style	ByColor		
Plot style table	None		
Plot table attached to	Model		
Plot table type	Not available		
View			
Center X	2.13/16"		
Center Y	3.3/16*		
Center Z	0"		
Height	21.0.9/16*		
Width	4'+6'3/8"		
Misc			
Annotation scale	1:1		
UCS icon On	Yes		
UCS icon at origin	Yes		
UCS per viewport	Yes		
UCS Name			
Visual Style	2D Wireframe		
			الاجامة جلامته فلاقت فلاج ويريبهم والالوج والمحاد
			Specify opposite corner or 19233761 -4"
		[* 27 El*Specify opposite corner or [Fence WPolygon Cholygon]:	Ť
odel Layout? Layout?	+		MODEL # # + 6 . X . Z K & L 1. 0 . + 90 10 5

cross selection (green) – drag/click from right bottom to left to select all objects crossed by the selection rectangle.



Tip. To select multiple objects, just click one and another. No need to hold [shift] key or [ctrl]

Refer to this link for select object Information from this link

(CO7) Understand essential drawing tools- Origin and Rectangle

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=5

Understand the "origin" of the drawing

AutoCAD drawing area is on a real scale, which means the drawing scale is 1:1 scale. Moreover, the drawing area is unlimited. You can draw the entire earth in the drawing. Furthermore, you can draw a small object, too. Designers often lose the point/location that they want to draw in the drawing when you draw in a big drawing. Thus, designers use the drawing origin (0,0,0) - ((x,y,z) for a 3D model) as the base point of the project. Usually, the origin of the drawing is the left-bottom corner on the first floor (if it is a 3D model). In AutoCAD, we use only (0,0) - (x,y).

To start your drawing, draw a building footprint or property line first.

- [STEP 1] Click [Rectangle] on the Home Ribbon, or type [rec] and Enter
- [STEP 2] Specify the first point, type [0,0] and Enter
- [STEP 3] Specify the next point. Any point on the right-top corner will be fine. It depends on the project size. For our project, type [58'7",20'4"]
- [STEP 4] Type [z] to zoom and type [a] and Enter



Line (command)

- [STEP 1] type [l] and Enter
- [STEP 2] specify the first point by clicking a point or typing [x,y]
- [STEP 3] specify the end point by clicking a point or typing [x,y] absolute point, type [@x,y] relative point

• Please refer to this link for the line command

Move (command)

- [STEP 1] type [m] and Enter
- [STEP 2] select the object/objects that you want to move and Enter
- [STEP 3] specify the base point
- [STEP 4] specify the second point to move the object/objects
- Please refer to this link for the move command

Copy (command)

- [STEP 1] type [co] and Enter
- [STEP 2] select the object/objects that you want to copy and Enter
- [STEP 3] specify the base point
- [STEP 4] specify the second point to copy the object/objects
- [STEP 5] specify the third point or more to copy the object/objects if you have. If you want to stop, use ESC
- Please refer to this link for the copy command
- Please practice Line, Move, Copy, and Rotate commands

(CO8) Attach image/PDF/CAD and adjust the scale of the attached file

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=5

Download a floor plan image (Eames House-House)

From this page, click [Eames_House_Floor_Plan_House.jpg] and mouse right-click to save the image file to your project folder.

Your CAD file and JPG file MUST be in the same folder. Otherwise, you have to relink the file every time or set your link relatively.

Insert the image file.

- [STEP 1] Click [Insert] on the ribbon tab
- [STEP 2] Click [Attach] on the Reference palette

A. DBB	BBG G F	* Ŧ			
Home In	sert Annotate	Parametric View	Manage	Output A360	Express Tools F
Insert Edit Attribute	Create Define Block Attribute	Manage Block s Attributes Editor	Attach Clip	Adjust	erlay Layers mes vary* • to Underlays ON •
Block -	Block Def	inition 🔻	D.	ce ▼	لا
Start	Orawing1*	× +			
PROPERTIES			[][Top]][2D Wireframe]	
No selection	9	- 🔁 +	-42		

- [STEP 3] Select [Eames_House_Floor_Plan_House.jpg] from your project folder > Click [open]
- [STEP 4] Click [OK] on the Attach Image window

Preview	Path type Relative path	Scale Specify on screen 1.0000
	Insertion point	Rotation Specify on-screen Angle: 0

• [STEP 5] Click the origin point or type [0,0] and Enter

Adjust scale

- [STEP 1] Specify the scale factor [1] and Enter
- [STEP 2] Select the inserted image > Change the Fade value to [50] or lower that you can see the background

Brightne]s 50 Contrast 50 Fade 50	STEP 2 ping	how Background External ransparency References
Adjust	Clipping	Options
Start D	rawing1* × +	
PROPERTIES		[-][Top][2D Wireframe]
Raster Image	- 🔁 -	
General		
Color Layer Linetype scale Plot style Lineweight Transparency Hyperlink Image Adjust Brightness Contrast	D ByLayer 0 ByLayer 1.0000 ByColor ByLayer ByLayer 50 50 50	
rade	50	
Desition V	0"	
Position X Position Y Position Z Rotation Width	0" 0" 0 1"	
Height	11/16" 1.0000	

- [STEP 3] Zoom in to the scale or a known dimension
- [STEP 4] Type [SC] and Enter for Scale change
- [STEP 5] Click a base point > Type [r] and Enter > Click the base point > Click a second point that you know a dimension (for this draw, you can use the scale bar) > Type the known dimension [1']



Change the drawing order

• [STEP 1] Click the inserted image

• [STEP 2] Mouse right-click > Click [Draw Order] > Click [Send to Back]

	Repeat ZOOM	the second second second
	Recent Input >	
T/F	Clipboard >	
	lsolate >	
	Erase	
+0+	Move	
60	Copy Selection	
	Scale	
0	Rotate	
Y	Draw Order >	🔁 Bring to Front
	Group >	🔁 Send to Back
	Image >	Bring Above Objects
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Add Selected	Send Under Objects

Move the image to the building footprint

- [STEP 1] Select the inserted image
- [STEP 2] Type [m] to move and Enter
- [STEP 3] Click a base point > Click the target point to move
- Tip! Use Object snap [F3] to select the target point from the building footprint.



(CO9) Set the project folder, Save the file, and backups

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=5

Save the file

It is vital to save your file as early as possible. Moreover, save anytime, and the moment you think it is appropriate. I usually save within 15 min (at least four times per hour).

- [STEP 01] Click [Application menu] > Click [Save]
- [STEP 02] Select a project folder on your hard drive, external hard drive, USB, Dropbox, or Onedrive
- [STEP 03] Recommended file type AutoCAD 2007/LT2007 Drawing(*.dwg)
- [STEP 04] Recommended file name Eames_House_Project_Firstname_Lastname_01.dwg

Tip! (.bak) file is a backup file. In the default setting, every 10 minutes, the file will be saved. To use the backup file, change the file extension (.bak) to (.dwg)

References

Narayan, K. Lalit (2008). <u>Computer Aided Design and Manufacturing</u>. New Delhi: Prentice Hall of India. <u>ISBN 978-8120333420</u>.

Pottmann, H.; Brell-Cokcan, S. and Wallner, J. (2007) <u>"Discrete surfaces for architectural design" Archived</u> 2009-08-12 at the <u>Wayback Machine</u>, pp. 213–234 in Curve and Surface Design, Patrick

Chenin, Tom Lyche and Larry L. Schumaker (eds.), Nashboro Press, <u>ISBN 978-0-9728482-7-5</u>.

"Chapter 8 : Autodesk and AutoCAD" (PDF). Cadhistory.net. Retrieved 2020-07-11. <u>http://cadhistory.net/</u>08%20Autodesk%20and%20AutoCAD.pdf

Chapter 2. Draw floor plans



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Understand Layers - Name, Line type, Thickness, & Color

(CO 2) Draw centerlines - Object snap, Line, Move, & Offest

(CO 3) Draw exterior/interior walls, floor, millwork & openings – Polyline, Spline, Circle, Rectengule, Object Snap, Mirror, Fillet, Trim, Extend, Array, & Match Properties

Session Highlights

At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Decture Contents

(CO I) Understand Layers – Name, Line type, Thickness, & Color

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=32

The concept of layers in CAD

Architects and designers use layers in vector-based CAD software.

The concept of layers allows CAD information to be organized, facilitates the visual display of the information on a computer screen, and allows the information to be efficiently converted to the conventional print media of drawings.

The efficient use of layers can reduce document preparation time and improve document coordination.

The American Institute of Architects and National Cad Standard published "AIA CAD Layer Guidelines."

Using layers can make your drawings easier to control and interpret for both you and your team. For example, you can draw your interior walls on one layer, and furniture on another using a different color. You can quickly turn off your furniture layer on a floor plan and turn on the furniture layer on a furniture plan.

You can control layers from the Layer Property Manager.

Line Polyline Circle Arc	Move C Rotate	A Text Dimension Table A Dimension Table A Dimension Table	• ● ● 0 • Image: Second state of the second stat
Draw 🔻	Modify 👻	Annotation 🔻	Layers 🔻
Start Drawing1*	X Eames_House_Project_Yongyeon_Ch	10_02 × +	
LAYER PROPERTIES MANAGER			[-][Top][2D Wireframe]
Current layer. 0		Search for layer	Q
≫ Sta Name ▲ On Fr ✓ 0 9	eeze Lock Plot Color Linetype ☆ 🗗 🖨 🗌 white Continu ·	Lineweight Tran N Description — Default 0 💀	

Each layer has a set of properties assigned to it.

- Name
- Turn On/Off
- Freeze Looks the same as turning on and off but uses less memory. Boost the speed of work.
- Lock
- Plot It shows on your screen, but it will not print.
- Color It is for working on the screen easier to recognize the layers by color. Usually, prints in black and white.
- Line weight Important to identify the hierarchy of the lines
- Line type
- Transparency not often used

• Description – note for the layer

Create Layers for the project

- [STEP 01] Open the Layer Property Manager panel by clicking the [Layer Property] icon under the [Home] tab on the [Layers] panel.
- [STEP 02] Click [New Layer] or Press [Alt+N] to add a new layer

Current layer:	0		Search for layer Q
* • • •	B S B S		C 🗗 🛱
Filters	« S., Name	▲ O. F., L., P., Color Linetype Lineweight Transp.,, N. Description	
E- CAL	V 0	ନ୍ 🔅 🔐 🖨 🗖 wh Continu — Defa 0 🛛 💁	
	Used Layers		

- [STEP 03] Rename the name of the layer by double-clicking the name of the layer to A-WALL
- [STEP 04] Update the color of the layer by clicking the color section to YELLOW
- [STEP 05] Update the line weight of the layer by clicking the Lineweight section to 0.5
- [STEP 06] Repeat the [STEP 02] to [STEP 05] to create the listed Layers below.

Current layer: S-GRID					Se
n n 4 5 5 5	J				
» S., Name	* O. F., L., P., Color	Linetype	Lineweight	Tra	N. Description
0	💡 🔅 🔐 🖨 🔲 white	Continuous	Default	0	F _
Z A-ANNO	ပွ 🔅 🔐 🖨 🗖 cyan	Contínuous	Default	0	R
Z A-ANNO-DIMS	ပ္ပ 🔆 🗗 🖨 📘 cyan	Continuous	Default	0	E.
Z A-ANNO-TEXT	ပွ 🔅 🗗 🖨 🗖 cyan	Continuous	Default	0	R.
A-ANNO-TTLB	💡 🔅 🔐 🖨 🔲 white	Continuous	🔲 0.60 mm	0	E.
A-CLNG	ዮ 🔆 🗗 🖨 🔲 30	Contínuous	0.30 mm	0	P
A-CLNG-PATT	ያ 🔅 🗗 🖨 🔲 30	Continuous	Default	0	R <mark>o</mark>
A-DETL	Q 🔆 🗗 🖨 🗖 90	Continuous	Default	0	R.
A-DOOR	ပ္ပ 🔆 🔐 🖨 🗖 blue	Continuous	0.30 mm	0	F _
A-FLOR	ዮጵዮዮ 🗗 🖨 🗖 40	Continuous	0.30 mm	0	E.
A-FLOR-FNSH	S 🔅 🗗 🖨 🗖 9	Continuous	Default	0	R
A-FLOR-HRAL	ç 🔅 🗗 🖨 🔳 8	Continuous	Default	0	R
A-FLOR-OVHD	ନ୍ 🔆 🗗 🖨 🗖 40	DASHED	0.30 mm	0	1
A-FLOR-STRS	ନ ·ପ୍ରି: 🗗 🖨 🔲 42	Contínuous	0.30 mm	0	r.
A-GLAZ	S 🔅 📲 🖯 🛛 8	Continuous	0.30 mm	0	R.
Z A-GLAZ-CURT	🖓 🔅 🔐 🖨 🗖 52	Continuous	Default	0	R
A-WALL	ပ္ပြင့္လြင့္လြင္ရရွိ 🔂 yellow	Continuous	0.50 mm	0	G
Z I-CASE	ନ୍ନ 🔆 🔐 🖨 🗖 230	Continuous	Default	0	R
Z I-FURN	ନ୍ନ 🔆 🔐 🖨 🗖 210	Continuous	Default	0	R
P-FIXT	ç x 🗗 🖨 🗖 60	Continuous	Default	0	R
S-COLS	S 🔅 🗗 🖨 🗖 yellow	Continuous	0.40 mm	0	5
S-GRID	ତ୍ 🔅 🔐 🖨 📕 10	CENTER	Default	0	R.
S-LEVL	ତ ପ୍ଳିକ <mark>=</mark> 10	CENTER	Default	0	R

Note 1. To update line type, click the line type that you want to update, and click [LOAD], and find the line type that you want to use for a layer, and click [OK], click the loaded line type to apply, and click [OK] to apply.

Note 1A. Due to the scale issue, the line type will not show it correctly. To correct the line type scale, type [lts] on the keyboard, and press the [Enter] key and enter [number]. For this project, try [10]

Note 2. The name of the layer is based on AIA CAD layer guidelines, the instructor modified. If you need other layers, please refer to the guideline.

Apply a layer to a model

[Method 1]

- [STEP 01] Fine a line/lines or an element/elements that you want to apply a layer
- [STEP 02] Select a layer that you want to apply to, then a layer of the element will be changed



[Method 2]

- [STEP 01] Select a layer that you want to draw
- [STEP 02] Draw a line/lines or an element/elements within the layer

[Method 3]

• Use [MATCHPROP] command or [MA] - match the property to copy a layer style to another

Tip. I prefer to use this method to speed up the work – Draw lines with all layers with name on the side of the drawing, and use match property command whenever it is needed. You can save time to find the layer and select the layer from the

drop-down menu.



(CO 2) Draw centerlines-column grid – Object snap, Line, Move, & Offset

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=32

Drawing a centerline can be the first step in drawing a floor plan. The drawing order depends on the phase of design and who is drawing. However, setting centerlines can be easier to draw a floor plan rather than starting from scratch.

- [STEP 01] Select the right layer to draw column grids. Click [S-GRID] from the [Home] ribbon on the [Layers] tab
- [STEP 02] Make sure [othormode] and [osnap] is on



OSNAP setting – to select a specific point of an element, it is recommended to use object snap [OSNAP]. To set up object snap, mouse right click on the OSNAP icon on the Status bar and check the point that you would like to select while the

object snap is on.



This image is the recommended object snap settings for 2D drafting, based on the instructor's experience. Note. For more information regarding OSNAP, please read this link about using Object Snapes.

• [STEP 03] Select [Line] from [Home] ribbon on [Draw] tab ,or Type [l] and press [Enter] on the keyboard to draw lines Click the base point [0,0] and mouse move to plan north, and type [25'] and press [Enter] on the keyboard



• [STEP 04] Move the gridline to the center of the building base footprint.

Click [Move] icon from [Home] ribbon on [Draw] tab or, type [m] and press [Enter] key



Click the midpoint of the selected line, and then click the midpoint of the building footprint

• [STEP 05] To create vertical grid lines, it is recommended to use the [OFFSET] command.

Click [OFFSET] icon from [HOME] ribbon on [DRAW] tab or, type [o] and press [Enter] key Type a specific number that you want to offset, for this project, enter 7'-4-3/4"

and then press [Enter] key,

and then click a point to the direction that you want to create the copied line,

if you use the same distance, you do not need to enter the number,

if you use a different distance, you must enter a specific number

- [STEP 06] Repeat [STEP 03] to [STEP 05] for horizontal grid lines
- [STEP 07] Copy the first level grid lines, both vertical and horizontal, for the second level To copy the lines, please use an even number (e.g., 28'-11" based on the base drawing)



(CO 3) Draw exterior/interior walls, floor, millwork & openings – Polyline, Spline, Circle, Rectangle, Mirror, Fillet, Trim, Extend, Array, & Match Properties

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=32

Let's draw the floor plans (no columns, no furniture, no windows, no doors, no patterns, no symbols, no plumbing, no dimensions, no texts at this point) with the following commands



image credit: Screen captured by the Author from the application

Make sure you use the commands below to control and easy selection [ORTHO] or [F8] key, [OSNAP] or [F3] key

If needed, you can turn on/off [grid] by press the [F7] key

Polyline(command) – this is for creating a connected line. Once you make an element (wall) with a polyline, the lines will be connected. This connection is useful in controlling each element.

- [STEP 01] Type [pl] on keyboard and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 02] Specify start point
- [STEP 03] Specify the next point.
- [STEP 04-01] If you want to close the object, type [c] on the keyboard and press the [Enter] key
- [STEP 04-02] If you want to finish the object without closing the object, press the [ESC] key
- Please refer to this link for the polyline command

Pedit(command) - this used to convert line objects to a polyline

- [STEP 01] Type [pe] on keyboard and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 02] Specify an object to convert a polyline
- [STEP 03] Type [y] and press the [Enter] key to turn the objects into one object.
- [STEP 04] Select [Join]
- [STEP 05] Select all connected objects that you want to join as a polyline, and press [Enter] key, and press [Enter] key one more time to finish the command
- Please refer to this link for the Pedit command

Explodes(command) – this is to convert a polyline or a block to line objects

- [STEP 01] Select an object (polyline or a block) to convert to line objects
- 33 | AutoCAD Session 2
- [STEP 02] Type [x] on the keyboard, and press [Enter] on the keyboard
- Please refer to this link for the Explodes command

Spline(command) – may not be needed for the Eames House project, but you will need it for your project – These commands for creating a connected curved line.

- [STEP 01] Type [spl] on keyboard, and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 02] Specify the first point
- [STEP 03] Specify the next points
- [STEP 04] Press [Enter] key to finish
- Please refer to this link for the Spline command

Circle(command)

- [STEP 01] Type [c] on keyboard, and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 02] Specify a center point
- [STEP 03] Specify a radius by typing a specific number of by clicking a specific point
- Please refer to this link for the circle command

Rectangle(command)

- [STEP 01] Type [rec] on keyboard, and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 02] Specify a first corner point
- [STEP 03] Specify another corner point
- Please refer to this link for the Rectangle command

Mirror(command)

- [STEP 01] Type [mi] on keyboard, and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 02] Select an object/objects, and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 03] Specify the first point of the mirror line
- [STEP 04] Specify the second point of the mirror line
- [STEP 05] Decide whether to erase the source objects or not, and press the [Enter] key to complete the command
- Please refer to this link for the Mirror command

Fillet(command) - create a corner between two objects

- [STEP 01] Type [f] on keyboard, and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 02] Select the first object
- [STEP 02-01] If you want to create a smooth corner, you can specify radius by type [r] and press [Enter] key, and type [specific number] and press [Enter] key
- the radius information will be stored, if you want to create a sharp corner, the R = 0.
- [STEP 03] Select the second object
- Please refer to this link for the Fillet command

Trim(command)

- [STEP 01] Type [tr] on keyboard, and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 02] Select cutting edges

- [STEP 03] Select object(s) to trim, and press the [Enter] key to complete the command
- Please refer to this link for the Trim command

Extend(command)

- [STEP 01] Type [ex] on keyboard, and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 02] Select boundary object(s)
- [STEP 03] Select object(s) to extend, and press the [Enter] key to complete the command
- Please refer to this link for the Extend command

Stretch(command)

- [STEP 01] Type [s] on keyboard, and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 02] Select objects specify the portion of the object that you want to stretch, using the crossing object selection method, and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 03] Specify the base point
- [STEP 04] Specify the destination point to complete the command
- Please refer to this link for the Stretch command

Match Property(command)

- [STEP 01] Select source object
- [STEP 02] Select destination object(s)
- Please refer to this link for the Match Property command

There is no right or wrong way to draw a floor plan, be creative, Designers!!

SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

National Institute of Building Sciences. (2005). AIA CAD Layer Guidelines: U.S. National CAD Standard Version 3. Retrieved October 12, 2020, from <u>http://www.close-range.com/docs/US_National_CAD_Standard_V3.pdf</u>

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). About Using Object Snaps. Retrieved October 13, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-8F5E5431-9EFB-414E-BC6D-2C65EFB2DAC3-htm.html

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). PLINE (Command). Retrieved October 13, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/</u> <u>support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/</u> <u>GUID-11883C70-6435-4F80-8FB4-F6E933B8FD94-htm.html</u>

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). PEDIT (Command). Retrieved October 13, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/

support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/ GUID-0C422AA9-23DD-4650-AD66-68E9D7989E3F-htm.html

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). EXPLODE (Command). Retrieved October 13, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-E98BCEF4-DED6-48A6-87EB-10FE87188083-htm.html

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). SPLINE (Command). Retrieved October 13, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/</u> <u>support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/</u> <u>GUID-5E7D51E2-1595-4E0C-85F8-2D7CBD166A08-htm.html?v=2020&st=spline</u>

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). CIRCLE (Command). Retrieved October 13, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/</u> <u>support/autocad-lt/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-LT/files/GUID-C60B6D5D-</u> <u>AAEB-420F-917F-6E6B47E92F48-htm.html</u>

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). RECTANG (Command). Retrieved October 13, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-188B2DDA-6CD8-4D37-BF26-E6CF27C34C75-htm.html

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). MIRROR (Command). Retrieved October 13, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/</u> <u>support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/</u> <u>GUID-595277C8-9B87-4CFB-A3AF-769537A22F3D-htm.html</u>

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). FILLET (Command). Retrieved October 13, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/</u> support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/ GUID-64F8B700-23B3-4BD6-8C03-66121AA13E8F-htm.html

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). TRIM (Command). Retrieved October 13, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/</u> support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-B1A185EF-07C6-4C53-A76F-05ADE11F5C32-htm.html

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). EXTEND (Command). Retrieved October 13, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/</u> <u>support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-89DD7B0F-</u> <u>F4F1-410D-9A3A-5847CA5F8744-htm.html</u>

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). STRETCH (Command). Retrieved October 13, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-F000A502-D39E-4D31-A8E2-4A626473FB72-htm.html

Autodesk Help. (2020, May 29). MATCHPROP (Command). Retrieved October 13, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-BD476C7C-2CA4-4FB2-8A9E-EAAD5A072445-htm.html

Chapter 3. Create dimensions and components

Session Objectives

Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Add/Edit dimensions (in model space) – Dim, & Dimension style
(CO 2) Add/Edit blocks from AutoCAD Tool Palette & Other sources – Door, Window, Column, Plumbing, Furniture & Equipment
(CO 3) Create custom blocks – Custom furniture

👻 Session Highlights

At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Decture Contents

(CO I) Add/Edit dimensions (in model space) – Dim, & Dimension style

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=78

Open your working CAD file.

Understand CAD dimension scale settings

- [METHOD 01] Dimension in model space for plotting in model space This is the traditional method used with single-view drawings Need <u>Text height charts</u> for correct text height, and it is challenging to be flexible in drawing scale.
- [METHOD 02] Dimension in model space for printing or plotting in paper space This was the preferred method for complex, multiple-view drawings. (We will practice this method for our project)
- [METHOD 03] dimension in layouts This is the simplest dimensioning method
- Please refer to this link for more information about scale for dimensions

Text Heights in paper space (I=I)

- 10 pt = 3/32" (minimum font to read)
- 12 pt = 1/8" (Standard text size)
- 18 pt = 3/16" (Subtitle text size)
- 24 pt = 1/4" (Title text size)

Understand the types of dimensions

- The basic types of dimensioning are linear, radial, angular, ordinate, and arc length.
- Please refer to this link for more information about the types of dimensions

Before you add dimensions, move the inserted drawing image to avoid accidental deletes and confusion.



Move the image to the right side – 100ft or any number that you can easily remember. You might need to move the image back to the original position.

Note. Make sure you turn on [ortho]

Set Drawing scale

- Before you start to add dimensions, it is recommended to set the drawing scale. Sometimes, the drawing scale can be changed for the drawing. However, once you set the drawing scale, less work is needed at the end.
- The drawing scale is defined with some factors the paper size, purposes of submissions, and so on.
- For this project, you will be asked to print out your drawings in 11in x 17in (Horizontal layout). Although the inserted original drawing scale is 3/8" = 1' -0", your drawing scale should be 3/16" = 1' -0"
- To set the scale, click the drawing scale [1:1] and select the drawing scale [3/16'' = 1' 0'']

MODEL Ⅲ Ⅲ ▼ ⊾ ♂ ▼ \ ▼ ∠ 🗂 ▼ ☴ 🗷 ≵ 🙏 (3/16" = 1"-0)" -) @	• +	- <u>-</u> 0	0	🖗 🖻 🗏
---	-----------------	-----	--------------	---	-------

image credit: Screen captured and modified by the Author from the application

• If you cannot find the ft-in types of scale, click [Custom] > click [Add] > add the name of the scale [3/16" = 1'-0"], add the value on Paper units [3/16], add the value on Drawing units [12] > click [OK] to complete the custom scale > click [OK] to set the scale

Set Dimension style

"A dimension style is a named collection of dimension settings that control the appearance of dimensions, such as arrowhead style, text location, and lateral tolerances." (Autodesk help, Mar 29, 2020)

Please refer to this link for more information about dimension style

• [STEP 01] To open Dimension Style Manager,

click [Annotation] ribbon tab, click [2013] on Dimension panel or, type [ddim] and press [Enter] key

• [STEP 02] Click [Annotative] > Click [Set Current] > Click [Modify] to open Modify Dimension Style: Annotative window

Dimension Style Manager Current dimension style: Annotative Styles: Annotative: Standard	Preview of: Annotative	X Set Current New Modify Qverride Compare
List:	Description	
All styles 🗸 🗸	Annotative	
<u>∼</u> <u>D</u> on't list styles in Xrefs	Close	<u>H</u> elp

 [STEP 03] Click [Lines] tab adjust the Baseline Spacing to 1/16" adjust the Extend beyond dim lines to 1/16" adjust the Offset from origin to 1/16"

- I			<u>/</u> _ ¶/		
0001:	П рувюск	-		1	
inetype:	ByBlock	~	•	$= \langle \rangle$	
ineweight:	ByBlock	~	ði -	X	2"
xtend beyond ticks:	b	-	$\leftarrow (+)$	60°	1
sealine enacing:	1/16"		$\langle \cup \rangle$	1	
asenne spacing.			Rife -		1
uppress: D	im line 1 🔄 Dim line	2			
xtension lines					-
otension lines olor:	ByBlock	~	xtend beyond dim lines:	1/16"	•
xtension lines olor: inetype ext line 1:	ByBlock	~	xtend beyond dim lines:	1/16"	
otension lines olor: inetype ext line 1: inetype ext line 2:	ByBlock ByBlock ByBlock ByBlock	~	xtend beyond dim lines: ffset from origin:	1/16"	•
otension lines olor: inetype ext line 1: inetype ext line 2:	ByBlock ByBlock ByBlock ByBlock ByBlock ByBlock	~ (~ ~ (xtend beyond dim lines: ffset from origin:] Fixed length extension li	1/16" 1/16" nes	•
inetype ext line 1: inetype ext line 1: inetype ext line 2: ineweight:	ByBlock ByBlock ByBlock ByBlock ByBlock ByBlock ByBlock		xtend beyond dim lines: ffset from origin:] Fixed length extension li Length:	1/16" 1/16" nes 1"	

 [STEP 04] Click [Symbols and Arrows] tab adjust the first Arrowheads to / Architectural tick adjust the second Arrowheads to / Architectural tick adjust the arrow size to 1/8" adjust the break size to 1/16"

nes Symbols and Arows Text Ht	Primary U	nits Alternate Unit	ts Tolerances	
Arrowneads		1-1	7	
Architectural tick	Y		- /	1
Second:		- -		\mathbf{X}
/ Architectural tick	Y	Ť (X	13
Leader:			\$	1
Closed filled	4	X		1
Arrow size:		*		
1/8"				
		Arc length symb	01 Iimension text	
Center marks		O Above dime	ension text	
Made 1/8"		O None		
		Radius jog dime	ension	
Dimension Prople		Jog angle:	45	1
Dimension break				
Break size:		Linear jog dimer	nsion	
1/16		1/16"	Total Later	
		1/10	Text heigh	nt

 [STEP 05] Click [Text] tab adjust the text height to 1/8" select Aligned with the dimension line

Text appearance			x- 1° x	
Text st <u>y</u> le:	Standard	×		7
Text <u>c</u> olor:	ByBlock	~ ~		1
Fill co <u>l</u> or:	□ None	~	$ \land \land$	2
Text height:	1/8	· 🕒	1 P	17
Fraction height sca	ile: 1.00	000	×	
Draw frame arou	und text			
Text placement		Text al	ignment	
Vertical:	Centered	✓ ○ Ho	rizontal	
Hori <u>z</u> ontal:	Centered	× 0.11		
View Direction:	Left-to-Right	Y Alig	ned with dimension line	
Offset from dim line	: 1/8"	Olso) standard	
	100			

• [STEP 06] Click [Fit] tab make sure [Annotative] is checked

<u>Fit options</u>	
If there isn't enough room to place both text and arrows inside extension lines, the first thing to move outside the extension lines is:	
 Either text or arrows (best fit) 	**
⊖ Arrows	
⊖ Text	
O Both text and arrows	*
Always keep text between ext lines	2°
Suppress arrows if they don't fit inside extension lines	Scale for dimension features
Text placement	Scale dimensions to layout
When text is not in the default position, place it:	Use overall scale of: 0.0000
<u>B</u> eside the dimension line	Fine tuning
Over dimension line, with leader	Place text manually
Over dimension line, without leader	Draw dim line between ext lines

 [STEP 07] Click [Primary Units] adjust the Unit format to Architectural adjust the Precision to 0' -0 1/8"

Linear dimensions			
		× 1"	-1
Unit format: Arch	nitectural 🗸 🗸		
Precision	1/8"		
Fraction format: Hori	zontal 🗸 🗸	7	
De <u>c</u> imal separator:	: (Period)		*
Round off:	0"		
Prefix:		<u>م</u> به	
Suffix:			
Measurement scale			
	1 0000		
Scale factor:	1.0000		
Scale factor:	ns only	Angular dimensi	ons
Scal <u>e</u> factor: Apply to layout dimension Zero suppression	ns only	- Angular dimensi Units format:	Decimal Degrees
Scal <u>e</u> factor: Apply to layout dimension Zero suppression Leading	ns only	Angular dimensi Units form <u>a</u> t:	Decimal Degrees V
Scale factor: Apply to layout dimension Zero suppression Leading Sub-units factor:	ns only	Angular dimensi Units form <u>a</u> t: Precisi <u>o</u> n:	Decimal Degrees ~ 0 ~
Scale factor: Apply to layout dimension Zero suppression Leading Sub-units factor: 8'-4"	I Trailing	Angular dimensi Units form <u>a</u> t: Precisi <u>o</u> n: Zero suppressi	Decimal Degrees ~ 0 ~
Scale factor: Apply to layout dimension Zero suppression Leading Sub-units factor: 8'-4" Sub-unit suffix:	ns only Trailing 0 feet 0 inches	Angular dimensi Units form <u>a</u> t: Precisi <u>o</u> n: Zero suppressi	Decimal Degrees ~ 0 ~

• [STEP 08] Click [OK] to complete the modification > Click [Close] to finish the dimension style manager

Add dimensions

• [STEP 01] Change layer to [A-ANNO-DIMS]



• [STEP 02] Click [Annotate] ribbon tab > make sure the dimension style is [Annotative] > click [Linear] to draw dimensions

or, type [dim] and press [Enter]

If Linear doesn't fit for your purpose, please select the types of dimension that you want to add.

	Home Insert Ar	nnotate) Parametric View M	lanage Output A	4360 Express Tool	ls Featured	Apps Acrobat	••				
	∧ ABC Standard	- 1-1	A Annotative		1 1 1	A 11	10	Standard	-		Standard
M	Itiline A Find text	Dimensio	B Use Current	vick ++ Continue	기 [의 귀	Center Centerline Mark	¥ Multileader	5월 7 ⁰ Add Leader /왕 7 ⁰ Remove Leader		Table	월 🔛 Extract Data 한 음 Link Data
	Text 🔻	×	Linear	ons 👻	ы	Centerlines		Leaders	ы		Tables
	Start Ea	mes_House_Project_Yongyeon_Cho	0								
	PROPERTIES		Aligned	ie]							
	No selection	- 📽 🔶 🐗	Angular								
	General	-									
	Color Layer	ByLayer A-ANNO-DIMS	Arc Length								
	Linetype	ByLayer	Radius								
nces	Lineweight	ByLayer	Diameter								
Refere	Thickness	0"	<u></u>								
al F	3D Visualization		5) Jogged								
tten	Material	ByLayer	0 X								
1	Plot style	-	of Urdinate								
	Plot style	ByColor	100								

• [STEP 03] make sure you turn on Object Snap Click the intersection point at the top left corner of the building column grids Click the next intersection point for dimensioning

Click a third time to place the dimension line and text



• [STEP 04] if the dimensions are in a continuous string, please use [continue] from the [Annotation] tab, [Dimensions] panel.

Add additional dimension lines to the previous dimension.

• [STEP 05] Repeat to dimension all column grids for the first floor and overall building dimensions.



Add a new dimension style

- 3/32" text size - Annotative and interior wall dimensions.

- [STEP 01] Type [ddim], and press [Enter] key to open [Dimension Style Manager]
- [STEP 02] Click [New] to create a new dimension style
- [STEP 03] Add new style name [Annotative 3-32], check start with [Annotative], [Annotative] checked, and click [Continue]
- [STEP 04] Adjust Arrow size from Symbols and Arrows to 1/8", adjust Text height from Text to 3/32" click [OK], click [Set Current] and click [Close]
- [STEP 05] Make sure your layer is correct in [A-ANNO-DIMS]
- [STEP 06] Type [dim], and press [Enter] key and start dimensioning for the interior walls (You don't need to match your dimensions exactly, as reference for this project, +/- 4 inches are acceptable)



(CO 2) Add/Edit blocks from AutoCAD Tool Palette & Other sources – Door, Window, Column, Plumbing, Furniture & Equipment

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=78

Understanding the concept of blocks in AutoCAD

- A block is a collection of objects that are combined into a single named object.
- Although a block and a group in AutoCAD look similar, these are different concepts. Basically, blocks are copies that will change if you change one, but groups will not change. Groups are unique.
- A block consists of the name of the block, the block geometry, the location of the base point, and any associated attribute data.
- For more information about blocks, please refer to this page

Source of blocks

Designers/drafters often bring blocks from outside resources. They use free resources from other websites and/or resources from the firm for schematic design to save time, resources from manufacturers for design development, and/or construction documents.

AutoCAD provides some basic blocks. You can find the block from the [Content Browser] and add blocks to [Tool Palette] and [Design Center]

Cad library websites

- BIM object <u>https://www.bimobject.com/en-us</u>
- CAD blocks <u>https://cad-blocks.net/index.html</u>
- DWG models <u>https://dwgmodels.com/interiors/</u>

Furniture manufactures websites for the Cad library

- Knoll <u>https://www.knoll.com/design-plan/resources/furniture-symbols</u>
- HermanMiller <u>https://www.hermanmiller.com/resources/3d-models-and-planning-tools/product-models/</u>
- Steelcase <u>https://www.steelcase.com/resources/3d-models-cad/</u>
- AllSteel <u>https://cms.allsteeloffice.com/Pages/Design-Resources/Planning-Tools/PlanningToolsLandingPage.aspx</u>

If designers/drafters cannot find blocks that they want to use for the project, they can create custom blocks. Sometimes it saves more time.

Add blocks from Tool Palettes (Use basic blocks from AutoCAD library)

Move the linked Eames House Floor plan image to match the drawing for reference– We moved the image to 100ft to the right. At this time, move the image back to the original place. If the image is hidden, show the image by clicking [Show Image] on the Image ribbon. If the image hides your drawing (Cad objects), let's change the drawing order by mouse right-click on

the image and click [Draw Order] > click [Send to Back]

	Repeat EXECUTETOOL Recent Input	>
10	Clipboard	>
	Isolate	>
	Erase Move	14
× × × × × ×	Copy Selection	
	Scale Rotate	7*-
	Draw Order	> 🗄 Bring to Front
	Group	> 🔁 Send to Back
	Image	> Bring Above Objects
°°	Add Selected	Send Under Objects
	Select Similar	

We will add columns from the tool palettes.

- [STEP 01] Click [View] tab > Click [Tool Palettes] under Palettes panel to open the panel or, type [TOOLPALETTES] on the command, and press [Enter] key
 Once the tool palettes are open, place the palette in a comfortable location (I personally like all palettes on the left side of the application.
- [STEP 02] Click [Structure] tab on the tool palettes > Click [WF beam Imperial]
- [STEP 03] Change the layer to [S-COLS]
- [STEP 04] Place the column on the top-left corner of the building. At this time, you cannot place the [WF beam imperial] to the precise location.



• [STEP 05] Move the column to the right position using [osnap] and guidelines



- [STEP 06] Copy the column to other positions of the first-floor plan; you will need to rotate the drawing and adjust your drawing according to the column locations.
 Tips. Use the intersection with object snap [F3] and ortho tool [F8]
- [STEP 07] Copy the columns on the first floor to the second floor.

You may lock the layers that do not need to be selected. After you copy the columns on the first floor to the second floor, you may also unlock the layer you locked.

Line Polyline Circle	Arc □ · ↓ Move Arc □ · ℃ Copy . □ · □ Stretch	 ○ Rotate → Trim • ▲ Mirror → Filet • Scale ↔ Array • ▲ Modify • 	A Dimension Cleader	Q X ← B ⁰ 0 Layer ¬ Q A Properties A B A A B A B A B A B A B A B A B A B A B A B A B A B	Ro Croste lineet di Edit V Edit Athributes + Properties ∰ Biock + Pro	ByLayer • Group # ByLayer • Group # ByLayer • Group #	Measure Paste Base
Start	Earnes_House_Project_Yon	gyeon_Cho_03* × +					
X Current layer: 0 25 10 10 10	4 4 4 V			Search for layer Q.	1 1 1		21/2
Filters	- S Name	- 0 Fre L.	Color Linetype Lineweight	Transp Plot			
a 🖏 Ali	V 0	2 1 1	wh Continu Defa	ult 0 Color			
Läyve Properties Manage	Met Antimo Antimo Antino Antimo Antin		Cyrrif Continu	att 0 1 1 att 0 1 1 1 att <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>			
	A-GLAZ-OURT A-GLAZ-OURT A-GLAZ-OURT Dedpoints I-GASE I-GASE I-GASE I-GASE F-FXT P-FXT P-FXT S-GOLS S-S-EPA	·····	94 Dotfmu Def 941 Dotfmu 050 940 Dotfmu Def 230 Continu Def 240 Continu Def 250 Continu Def 260 Continu Def 10 Centinu Def 10 CENTRA Def 10 CENTRA Def	att 0 Color att 0 Date att 0 Color			

Edit a Dynamic block

You can find [Door-Imperial] and [Window-Imperial] from the Architecture tab on the tool palettes to add to your drawing. However, the currently loaded blocks (ex. [Door-Imperial] and [Window-Imperial] with a thunderbolt image) on the tool palettes are called [Dynamic block], a dynamic block is a parametric block that users can easily modify.

- [STEP 01] Click [Window imperial] on the tool palette
- [STEP 02] Place [Window imperial] block in your drawing
- [STEP 03] Double-click [Window imperial] to open Edit Block Definition
- [STEP 04] Click [OK] to open the Block Editor

1	
	Edit Block Definition × Block to create or edit Window - Imperial Current Drawing> ArchTick Preview Door - Imperial Door - Left Hung 36 in. Drawing Title - Imperial Staircase - Spiral WF Beam - Imperial Preview Window - Imperial Beam - Imperial Preview Window - Imperial Beam - Imperial ØK Cancel Help

• [STEP 05] Select [Width=3'-0"] and adjust [Dist type] to [Increment] on the properties palette. And adjust [Dist increment] to [1/4"]

ROPERTIES		×			
Horizontal Constraint Param	neter - 😰 🔶 📲	e imperial somples			
General		Door -			
Color Layer Linetype Linetype scale Plot style Lineweight Transparency Hyperlink	■ ByLayer 0 1 0000 ByColor ByColor ByLayer ByLayer	Comparison C			
Constraint	-	g 🖄 Imperial		File Window	
Name Expression Value Description	Width 36 9/	Trolet - Imperial	<u>Wall=0'-4"</u> ■	¢	
Geometry	-	- Inperior	1	-4	J.
Dim line offset	-1'-7'5/8"	o venicies -	Ŧ		
Value Set	-	El Der		_ <u>h</u> ×	
Dist type Dist increment Dist minimum Dist maximum	Increment - None Increment	Elevation - L. Metric samples		* 📾	
Misc	-	Door - Metric			
Show Properties Number of Grips	Yes 1	Window -			
		Window (Ele Fluorescent (Recessed)			

- [STEP 06] Select [Wall=0'-4"] and adjust [Dist type] to [Increment] on the properties palette
- [STEP 07] Click [Save Block] from the [Block Editor] ribbon
- [STEP 08] Click [Close Block Editor] to close
- [STEP 09] Relocate the window and update the size of the window according to the floor plan

Repeat the steps for [Door-Imperial]. You will need to change the [Dist type] for [Door Size] and [Wall Thickness]

Complete placing and adjusting windows (curtain walls) and door (interior and exterior doors) within correct layers. If you can find the blocks, you can draw the elements with [line] or [poly line]



Add more blocks using [Design Center]

Design Center is a tool to access and add blocks, Dimension styles, Layers, Layouts, Line types, Multi leaders, Table styles, Visual styles, and Xrefs.

For more information about the Design Center, please refer to this page

I am going to demonstrate how to load a sink from the AutoCAD sample blocks.

- [STEP 01] Change layer to [P-FIXT]
- [STEP 02] Click [View] tab > Click [Design Center] icon or, Type [adcenter] on the command line, and press [Enter] key to open the Design Center window

Mome Insert Ace UCS View Navigation Cor Viewport Tools + Start. Earn	Internetic Vere Manage Dabat	A360 Express Tools Featured Apps Control Control Cont	Acobat The Horizontaly The Montaly Cransfe		
PROPERTIES No selection General	- a + a	Tippetul samples H	2 / ⁴ 1-21	1 54	1
Color Layer Linetype Linetype scale Lineweight	A-DOOR DyLayer 1.0000 ByLayer ByLayer	Window - Window - Mindow - Muminum Mindow (Ele	Felder Lief Perfors Perfors Portrogs Portrogs Portrogs Portrogs	ActiveX Database en-us	Mechanical Sheet Sets VBA VisualLISP
Thickness 3D Visualization Material	0° ByLayer	Recessed)	Adobe		
Plot style		Tolet -	(i) - 3ds Max 2019 Advance Steal Herald		

- [STEP 03] Once you click the [Home] icon , you can find [en-us] folder > double-click to open [en-us] > double-click to open [Design Center]. You can find some sample drawings containing blocks
 The folder structure may be different from the versions of AutoCAD, but generally, you can find the sample CAD files
 C:\Program Files\Autodesk\AutoCAD 2020\Sample\en-us\DesignCenter
- [STEP 04] Double-click [Kitchens.dwg] > Double-click [Blocks] > Double-click [Sink-single-30 in top] to inset in your file > Click [OK] to confirm the information
- [STEP 05] Place the sink in the kitchen, using object snap



- [STEP 6] Click the inserted block [Sink-single-30 in top] > Mouse right-click > Click [Edit Block In-place] > Click [OK] on reference Edit
- [STEP 7] Use [Stretch] tool to resize the sink, and delete elements that are not needed, and add geometrics for the sink Note 1. For the assignment, you don't need to make the model 100% the same. Some flexibility will be acceptable (shape of sink and faucet)

Note 2. When you draw a new line and element, use the [0] layer in a block

• [STEP 8] Once you are done with the editing > Click [Save Changes] on the [Home] ribbon, under [Edit Reference] panel



If you want to rename the block, type [rename] on the commend. > Click [blocks] > Click [blocks that you want to rename] If the block is your own or whether it was modified from another or created new, add [000_] in the first part of the block name to recognize/find the block easily

lamed Objects	Items	
Blocks Detail view styles Dimension styles Layers Linetypes Materials Multileader styles Section view styles Table styles UCSs Viewports Views	_Arch Tick _ClosedBlank Door - Imperial Door - Left Hung 36 in. Drawing Title - Imperial I Beam - Imperial Sink-single - 36 in top Staircase - Spiral WF Beam - Imperial Window - Imperial	
<u>0</u> Id Name:	Sink-single - 30 in top	
Rename To:	000 Sink-single - 38 in top	

If you want to use a downloaded CAD file (e.g., <u>https://cad-blocks.net/kitchen-cad-blocks-kitchen-sink.html</u>).

- Save the downloaded file in a project folder
- Open the [design center]
- Click [Load]
- Find the project folder where you saved the downloaded cad file
- Click [Open] to load
- Double-click [Blocks]
- Select a block that you want to use in your project and double click to load

If the inserted block is the wrong scale, adjust the scale.

Please use these strategies to draw plumbing fixtures in the kitchen and bathrooms. You will select your selections of blocks. The below image is a reference only.

- Add (2) beds in the bedrooms
- Add (1) desk and chair set in the bedroom
- Add (1) dining table-chair set in the dining area
- Add (1) table in the alcove
- Add (1) table in the living room
- Add bookshelves in the living room
- Add (1) lounge chair in the living room
- Add (2) chairs in the living room



We will ask you to create custom furniture (sofa set) below.

(CO 3) Create custom blocks – Custom furniture

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=78

Sometimes, you may experience difficulty finding CAD blocks from CAD library websites and/or manufacturers' websites. Especially, it is hard to find furniture blocks for residential projects. In this tutorial, you will learn how to create blocks using

product information and photos. I will demonstrate it using two different sofa sizes from the website Design Within Reach (DWR). You will create using your selections of furniture for the project.

Create an 86" sofa block

- [STEP 01] Retrieve the product information (dimensions) and images from the DWR website
- [STEP 02] Change layer to [0] > Draw overall size of the sofa (Width=86" & Depth=33") using [pline] or [rectang], make sure turn [ortho] on for 90 degree
- [STEP 03] Download or screenshot the product image to your project folder Most of the time, you cannot find a top view of a product. You may rely on a front view to draw a floor plan view for the product.
- [STEP 04] Insert the front view image into your drawing file. Click [Insert] tab > Click [Attach] > Click the downloaded file > Click [Open] > Click [OK] on Attach Image > Click once on the drawing area > Click once again near the first point > Click the inserted image > Adjust the [Fade] value to [50] > mouse right-click on the image > Click [Drawing Order] > Click [Send to back]
- [STEP 05] Relocate and rescale the inserted image to match the overall sofa dimensions. For relocating, you will need to use [Move], [Rotate], and [osnap] command. For rescaling, you will need to use [scale] with Reference [R].
- [STEP 06] Draw the details of the sofa using [line], [pline], [rectang], and [circle]. Use the detailed dimensions what the website provided. Also verify the dimensions using [distance] type [di] and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 07] Before defining the lines to a block, make sure all lines are in the [0] layer.
- [STEP 08] Select all lines for the sofa (excluding the inserted image) > Type [b] on the command line and press [Enter]. Block Definition window will open > Name the block something meaningful (e.g., 000_DWR-Bantam_Sofa-Plan) > Click [OK] > Change the block from [0] layer to [I-FURN] > If you don't need the inserted image anymore, you can delete the image.

0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	

Create a 73" sofa block using the [000_DWR-Bantam_Sofa-Plan] block

Rather than redraw the 73" sofa block from scratch, you can start with the [000_DWR-Bantam_Sofa-Plan] block and using the Stretch tool to adjust the length.

• [STEP 01] Type [co] to copy [000_DWR-Bantam_Sofa-Plan] block or Insert the [000_DWR-Bantam_Sofa-Plan] block

on the drawing area – Click [Insert] tab > Click [insert] icon under Block panel > Select the block > place the block on the drawing area.

- [STEP 02] Type [x], and press [Enter] key. The Explode command breaks up a block into individual lines. This commend is useful to convert a block into elements for redefining a block. For more information about this command, refer to this page.
- [STEP 03] Use [Stretch] commend to resize the sofa. And edit the details.
- [STEP 04] Create a new block by typing [b], and pressing [Enter] > name the block [000_DWR-Bantam_Sofa-73-Front] > update the layer to [I-FURN] > place the sofa



SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

Text and Scale Factors. (n.d.). Retrieved October 19, 2020, from <u>http://cstl-pti.semo.edu/bbowers/files/</u> text%20and%20scale%20factors.pdf

Autodesk.Help. (2018, January 11). About Setting the Scale for Dimensions. Retrieved October 19, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2018/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-30D6D9C8-AB99-47D1-B420-3D4EB6C7B0D1-htm.html

Autodesk.Help. (2018, January 11). About the Types of Dimensions. Retrieved October 19, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2018/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-9A8AB1F2-4754-444C-B90D-CD3F2FC8A3E0-htm.html

Autodesk.Help. (2020, March 29). About Dimension Styles. Retrieved October 19, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-5469B348-3425-41C6-9CEC-F267BF6CCCA2-htm.html

Autodesk.Help. (2020, March 29). Blocks. Retrieved October 19, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/getting-started/caas/CloudHelp/2019/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/</u>GUID-2DA2ADA1-C8CC-4E61-9598-06580FFD3544-htm.html

Autodesk.Help. (2020, March 29). About DesignCenter. Retrieved October 19, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudHelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-B3071AE7-76BB-436C-9BAE-CC54CFBD4F96-htm.html

Design Within Reach. (n.d.). Retrieved October 19, 2020, from <u>https://www.dwr.com/living-sofas-sectionals/bantam-sofa/1246.html?lang=en_US#lang=en_US&q=bantam&start=2</u>

Autodesk.Help. (2020, March 29). Explode (Command). Retrieved October 19, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-E98BCEF4-DED6-48A6-87EB-10FE87188083-htm.html

Chapter 4. Draw elevation and sections



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Draw a section
(CO 2) Draw an elevation from the floor plan
(CO 3) Add/Edit Text & Annotation (in model space-annotative) – M Text, Text Style, M leader, and Multileader Style



At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Lecture Contents

(CO I) Draw a section

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=80

"A section is a cut-through of a space that will show more of the room's features. It also allows you to show some structural detail. A section line can be cut from any part of the space, depending on what you would like to show." Retrieved from <u>https://www.nda.ac.uk/blog/identify-plans-elevations-sections/</u>

"A 'section drawing,' 'section,' or 'sectional drawing' shows a view of a structure as though it had been sliced in half or cut along another imaginary plane."

Retrieved from https://www.designingbuildings.co.uk/wiki/Section_drawing

For more information about a building section drawing, please read this page: <u>https://www.designingbuildings.co.uk/wiki/</u><u>Section_drawing</u>

In this tutorial, students will draw a building section based on Eames House, House, Section A-A' drawing, the plan south section (You can download the image from Canvas Module and this link <u>Eames_House_House_Section_A-A'.jpg</u>), and your space planning (Furnishings, fixtures, and equipment).



HOUSE, SECTION A-A'

image credit: Screen captured by the Author from <u>http://www.loc.gov/pictures/collection/hh/item/ca4169/</u> (Eames House as-built drawing, public domain)

- [STEP 01] Open your CAD file for the Eames House Project.
- [STEP 02] Copy the floor plans (1st floor & 2nd floor) to the right side 100'. This step is optional, but I prefer to save the original plans and to use the copied plans for creating a section view.



• [STEP 03] confirm you are in [0] layer and Draw a section line (recommended to use [PLINE]) on the first floor for a section view. Copy the section line in the same position for the second floor. You can rely on a column grid line. (For section line, you can break and offset the line to focus on key interior and/or architectural elements. The line should start and stop outside of the plan, and you should add a small perpendicular box to indicate the direction of the section view. Update the section lines to the [A-ANNO] layer.



- [STEP 4] Draw a perpendicular line from the section line on the first floor to indicate the building boundary and drawing boundary.
- [STEP 5] Insert the section drawing (Eames_House_House_Section_A-A'.jpg) by clicking [inset] > click [attach] > select the file Eames_House_House_Section_A-A'.jpg from your project folder > click [open] > click [ok] on Attach Image window > click a base point and the second point to insert the image > adjust Image Fade to 50 > mouse right-click on the image > click [Draw Order] > click [Send to Back]
- [STEP 6] Relocate (use [move] command) and rescale (use [scale] command) the inserted image to fit the building

boundary for the section lines.

Note, you must use the object snape [F3] appropriately when you adjust the scale. Sometimes the object snap works perfectly to click the CAD object. Sometimes the command does not work to click a point in a raster image.



- [STEP 7] Now, you are ready to draw the section with the inserted image.
 - Note 1. You will rely on the dimensions on the inserted image, the lines on your floor plan. Use numeric values to draw lines (please, don't just click on the image except for the spiral stair. The image is reference only because the scaled image is always a bit off).
 - Note 2. Create three new layers
 - [A-LWT-OBJECT] 0.2mm The edges of objects, and represent a change in depth
 - [A-LWT-SECTION] 0.5mm The lines are representing the boundary of anything cut-through
 - [A-LWT-SURFACE] 0.05mm The lines are detail lines on an object. They don't represent much (if any) change in depth
 - Note 3. Use [LINE]. [PLINE], [SPLINE], [CIRCLE], [TRIM], [OFFSET], [FILLET], [EXTEND], and [STRETCH] commands.
 - Note 4. You also update the line type manually for door and window openings.
 - Note 5. First, you draw the guidelines. You are using [xline] for creating a line of infinite length.



• Then, you draw the section lines.

		·····································
-0.22, 217 Jay A-A		A DECEMBER OF A

• After that, you draw the object lines.



• Draw surface lines for details.



• Finally, you add furniture, and you should edit the details and objects hidden from the front of the object.



- [STEP 8] Move the section and the section lines that you drew except the inserted image 100' to the left to save the section drawing in a safe drawing area.
- [STEP 9] Create a block for the section. Select all the elements in the section > Type [B] for creating a block > Define the name [000_Section A-A'] > Click [OK]

(CO 2) Draw an elevation from the floor plan

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=80

"An elevation is a view from the side of an object when drawing interior elevations; this would represent one of the walls. This would include any windows or doors as well as any built-in furniture that is in direct contact with the wall." Retrieved from <u>https://www.nda.ac.uk/blog/identify-plans-elevations-sections/</u>

"The term 'elevation' refers to an orthographic projection of the exterior (or sometimes the interior) faces of a building, that is, a two-dimensional drawing of the building's façades." Retrieved from <u>https://www.designingbuildings.co.uk/wiki/Elevations</u>

In this tutorial, students will draw an interior elevation based on Eames House, House, Section C-C' drawing, the plan west elevation in the living room. Students will not draw a section. You will need to understand the concept of elevation and will draw only interior elevation.

• [STEP 01] Decide an elevation view.



- [STEP 02] Draw outline of the elevation by using [xline] to draw the boundary of the elevation.
- [STEP 03] Rotate and relocate the section view c-c' from the inserted image to match the boundary of the elevation. You will need to rotate 90degree clockwise.



- [STEP 04] Rotate the copied floor plan and the inserted image to 90degree counterclockwise. The reason for this step is to draw the elevation quickly. It typically takes less time to draw the elevation in the right direction (Up-North, Down-South, Left-West, and Right-East).
- [STEP 05] Remove the elements that are not needed from the copied floor plan. Make sure you saved the original floor plan. You only delete the elements in the COPIED floor plan.



- [STEP 06] Now you can draw the elevation
 - Draw floor level and ceiling level (8' -1" AFF) (Typically, an interior elevation expresses interior elements only. You don't draw wall thickness, window cut, ceiling structure, and roof structure.) > Change the lines for the wall ends, floor level, and the ceiling level to [A-LWT-SECTION]
 - Switch the layer to [A-LWT-OBJECT] > Draw wall and furniture by using [LINE], [PLINE], [CIRCLE], [FILLET].
 [TRIM]

• If needed, switch the layer to [A-LWT-SURFACE] > Draw anything that is not important in terms of construction.

- [STEP 07] Add dimensions and opening for more information
 - On the Application Status Bar, switch the scale to $3/8^{"} = 1'0"$
 - Type [ddim] and press [enter] to open [Dimension Style Manger]
 - Click [Annotative-3-32] > click [Set Current] > click [Close]
 - Type [dim] and press [enter] to add dimension
 - You will need to click the first extension line origin > click the second extension line origin > specify dimension line location. Repeat this process to add dimensions for the casework.
- [STEP 08] Make a block for the elevation.
 - Select the elevation, including lines and dimensions.
 - Type [b], press [enter] to open [Block Definition]
 - Define the name [000_Elevation-A]
 - Click [OK] to finish the command



- [STEP 09] Organize your drawings.
 - Move the inserted reference images to 75' plan north.
 - Move your section and elevation on the right side of the floor plans.



(CO 3) Add/Edit Text & Annotation (in model space – annotative) – M Text, Text Style, M leader, and Multileader Style

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=80

In this tutorial, students will learn how to add and edit text and annotation in the drawing area by using [MULTILINE TEXT], [TEXTSTYLE], [MULTILINE LEADER], and [LEADERSTYLE]
Add room names and room numbers on the floor plan.

- [STEP 01] Switch to the [A-ANNO-TEXT] layer
- [STEP 02] Adjust units by typing [UN] and press [enter] to open [Drawing units].
 - The current unit precision is 0' -0 1/16"
 - $\circ~$ Change the unit precision to 0' -0 1/32"
 - Click [OK] to close the Drawing units window
- [STEP 03] Add two text styles for the room names and room numbers
 - From the Annotate tab, Text panel on the ribbon, Click [Standard] > Click [Manage Text Styles]



- On [Text Style] window, click [New]
- Enter Style name [Annotative 1-8] and click [OK]
- Confirm [Annotative] is checked, update Paper Text Height to [0'-0 1/8"]
- Click [Apply]
- Click [Set Current]
- Click [New]
- Enter Style name [Annotative 3-32] and click [OK]
- Confirm [Annotative] is checked, update Paper Text Height to [0'-0 3/32"]
- Click [Apply] and click [Close]

A Text Style			×
Current text style: Annotative 1-8 Styles: Annotative 1-8 Annotative 3-32 Standard –	Font Font Name: Thr Arial ~ Use Big Font.	Font Style: Regular ∽	Set Current New
	Size Annotative Match text orientation to layout	Paper Text Height 0'-0 1/8"	COLO
All styles 🗸 🗸	Effects		
Apph122	Upside down Backwards	Width Factor: 1.00000 Oblique Angle:	
Aabuizs	Vertical	0	
	C	Apply Cancel	Help

- [STEP 04] Add room name
 - Verify the Text Style is [Annotative 1-8] from [Annotate] tab, on [Text] panel
 - Click [Multiline Text] from [Annotate] tab, on [Text] panel or, Type [mt] and press [Enter]
 - Define a text box for a room name. Using All Caps are recommended for a room name. Sometimes, use an acronym. (e.g., LIVING RM)
 - Enter [a room name] and click a point outside of the text box.
- [STEP 05] Add room number
 - Verify the Text Style is [Annotative 3-32] from [Annotate] tab, on [Text] panel
 - Click [Multiline Text] from [Annotate] tab, on [Text] panel or, Type [mt] and press [Enter]
 - Define a text box for a room number.
 - Enter [a room name] and click a point outside of the text box. Typically, each room requires one number, e.g., 102 (The first number (1) indicates the floor number. In this case, the living room is located on the first level. The second and the third number (02) indicate room number that starts from the main entry to clockwise. In this case, the HALL is 101; LIVING RM is 102.
 - Draw a box around using [RECTANGLE]
- [STEP 06] Create a block for the room name and number that you just created. Name the block to [000_Room name and number]

Note. This strategy is useful because once the block is updated on the floor plan, the room names and room numbers are automatically updated on other plans like a ceiling plan, finish plan and more.

- [STEP 07] Use [Edit Block-in Place] to copy the room name and number to all rooms > Edit the names and numbers by double-clicking the name and the number > Click [Save Changes] to close [Edit Block-in Place]
- [STEP 08] Update the block from [A-ANNO-TEXT] layer to [0] layer



Add text and annotate on the floor plan

- [STEP 01] Switch to [A-ANNO] layer
- [STEP 02] Draw lines for openings and change [line type] to [Dashed]



- [STEP 03] Add multiline texts
 - Add [OPEN TO BELOW] text on the second level above the LIVING RM-102. Make sure the scale is 3/16" =1' -0"

while you add the text

Add [OPEN TO HALL] and [OPEN TO KITCHEN] texts on the [ELEVATION A]. Make sure the scale is 3/8" =1'
 -0" while you add the text

Add annotates on the elevation A

- [STEP 01] Switch to [A-ANNO-TEXT]
- [STEP 02] Click [Manage Multileader Styles] from Annotation tab, Leader panel, under Standard

~ ~	Hom	e.	Insert	Annotate	Parametric	View Ma	anage Output Add-ins	Express Tools	eat	ured Apps 🕢						
Δ	A	SC.	🙏 Anne	otative 3-32	*		Annotative-3-32	- ± I.	N.	$\oplus =$	10	Annotative 3-32		E S	standard	
Multilin	e l	Ê	Field Bert		®,	Dimension	Use Current		97	Center Centerline	⊭ Multileader		-	1.100	🛊 🧱 Extract Data	
Text	1	A	3/32"		-		Linear - 🔽 Quick 💾	Continue *		Mark		- Defeult Text	1		Link Data	
		-	Tex	t •	3		Dimensions *		2	Centerlines		Annotative 3-32	Standard	4	Tables	ж
Star				Eames_House	e_Project_Yong	gyeon_Cho_G	14" × +					Manage Multilaader St	der			
ter												twanage woldleader of	Y DCanon			
Palet														Manage	Multileader Styles	
- All														Press F1	for more help	
ettes																

- [STEP 03] Click [NEW] > Add a new name for leader style [Annotative 3-32] > Check Annotative box on > Click [Continue]
- [STEP 04] Update these values to 3/32" Text height from Content tab, Landing gap from Content tab, Arrowhead size from Leader Format, Break size from Leader Format, and Set Landing distance from Leader Structure > Click [OK] to close the window
- [STEP 05] Click [Set Current]
- [STEP 06] Click [Multileader] from the Annotate tab, on the Leader panel or, type [MLD] to add leader and text



SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

Designing Buildings Wiki. (2020, August 30). Elevations. Retrieved October 19, 2020, from <u>https://www.designingbuildings.co.uk/wiki/Elevations</u>

Designing Buildings Wiki. (2020, August 28). Section drawing. Retrieved October 19, 2020, from <u>https://www.designingbuildings.co.uk/wiki/Section_drawing</u>

Historic American Buildings Survey. (n.d.). Eames House, 203 Chautauqua Boulevard, Los Angeles, Los Angeles County, CA. Retrieved October 19, 2020, from <u>http://www.loc.gov/pictures/collection/hh/item/ca4169/</u>

National Design Academy. (2020, September 28). What's the Difference Between a Plan, Elevation and a Section? Retrieved October 19, 2020, from https://www.nda.ac.uk/blog/identify-plans-elevations-sections/

Chapter 5. Draw ceiling plans



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Draw RCPs from Floor plans (CO 2) Add/Edit Hatch (CO 3) Create a legend for the RCPs



At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



ULecture Contents

(CO I) Draw Reflected ceiling plans (RCPs) from floor plans

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=82

In this tutorial, you will learn how to draw an RCP in AutoCAD.

Open your AutoCAD file

Copy elements from the floor plan

• [STEP 01] Turn layers off that are not needed to copy for the RCPs.

Turn off the following layers: A-ANNO, A-ANNO-DIMS, A-ANNO-TEXT, ANNO-TTLB, A-CLNG, A-CLNG-PATT, A-DETL, A-FLOR, A-FLOR-FNSH, A-FLOR-HRAL, A-LWT-OBJECT, A-LWT-SECTION, A-LWT-SURFACE, Defpoints, I-FURN, P-FIX, S-LEVEL



- [STEP 02] Copy the remaining elements to 100' plan south direction
- [STEP 03] Turn on all layers
- [STEP 04] Clean up the plan
 - In the space, we want to show all door openings, but not the doors themselves. To remove the door swing, you must Explode the door blocks and remove the doors themselves and swings
 - For the casework, remove the casework that is not below 5 ft.
 - Extend lines as needed to clean up the plan
- [STEP 05] Lock [S-GRID] layer > Select all walls and elements for the RCPs > Switch to the [A-CLNG] layer.

• [STEP 06] Make the [A-CLNG] layer to the Current Layer

ete 🐒 Trim · 🦉 A Array · C Itad	ar - Layer ber - Layer Properties	Lo Create Insert S Edit Edit Attributes -	Match ByLayer Match ByLayer Properties ByLayer	Group	Paste Base Select Mode	
LAVER PROPERTIES MANAGER	Layers +	DIOCK +	Properties *	a broups - btilties -	Clippoard view + + Touch	
LAVER PROPERTIES MANAGER Current layer A-CLNG	Search for layer Import □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● ● □ ● ● ● □ ● ● ● □ ● ● ● □ ● ● ● □ ● ● ● □ ● ● ● □ ● ● □ ● ● □ ● ● □ ● ● □ ● ● □ ● ●					W TOP E
→ A+CURSHIS V <t< td=""><td>4-2 Continu — 0.30 0 16 160 Continu</td><td>Y</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>	4-2 Continu — 0.30 0 16 160 Continu	Y				

• [STEP 07] Add ceiling elements (height changes and ceiling structure if it is the open ceiling)



- [STEP 08] Make the [A-CLNG-PATT] layer to the Current Layer > Confirm the layer color to 34 > Add ceiling pattern
- [STEP 09] Make the [A-CLNG-PATT] layer to the Current Layer > Add ceiling annotation



• [STEP 10] Copy the room name and number block from floor plan



- [STEP 11] Create Lighting symbols
 - You can bring lighting symbols (blocks) from other websites or the samples from Electrical-lighting folders using [DESIGN CENTER]
 - And you also can make your own symbols for your project. I created eight types of lighting fixtures



- [STEP 12] Add [A-CLNG-FIXT], color 190, lineweight 0.25mm > Place lighting symbols (blocks) in the floor plans > Switch the light symbols to [A-CLNG-FIXT]
- [STEP 13] Select all lighting symbols from the floor plans > Create a block [000-lighting fixtures] > Move the block to the RCPs



• [STEP 14] Select the block on the RCPs> Mouse right-click > Select [Edit Block in-place] > Adjust and align the lighting fixture with add dimensions > Click [Save changes]



(CO 2) Add /Edit Hatch

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=82

- [STEP 1] Hide unnecessary layers for better hatch results
 - Confirm the current layer is [0] layer
 - Turn off all layers except [0], [A-WALL], [A-LWT-SECTION], and [A-CLNG] layers



- [STEP 2] Draw lines or pline to create a closed object
 - Hatch only recognizes a closed object. Thus you must make a closed pline or lines that are completely closed. If you are unsure the object is closed or not, you have to try the Hatch command first. If the hatch command doesn't work, you have to redraw using [PLINE] or use [PEDIT] to convert from lines to [pline].



- [STEP 3] Add hatch for the wall
 - Confirm the current layer is [A-WALL]
 - Click the Hatch icon from the [HOME] tab, on the Draw panel or, type [H] and press [ENTER]
 - Select Solid from the [HATCH EDITOR] tab, on the [PATTERN] panel
 - Select color nine from the [HATCH EDITOR] tab, on the [PROPERTIES] panel
 - As you move your mouse cursor over a closed object, the hatch pattern fills the area. If you don't get the preview, that means you don't have a closed object.
 - You can select multiple files for one hatch command
 - Press [ENTER] to finish the hatch command



- [STEP 4] Copy wall fills to RCPs
 - Select the wall fills you just made. if necessary, you also can make a block for the wall fills by typing [B] and press [ENTER]
 - Change drawing order to [SEND TO BACK] by clicking mouse right-click and select [SEND TO BACK]
 - Copy the wall fills from the floor plans to the RCPs



- [STEP 5] Add hatch for the section view
 - Select the section view
 - Mouse right-click > select [EDIT BLOCK IN-PLACE] > Click [OK]
 - $\circ~$ Draw lines or polylines to make a closed object. Make sure you are in a correct layer
 - Select [HATCH] icon from [HOME] tab, on [DRAW] panel or, Type [H], and press [ENTER] key
 - Select a closed wall, floor, ceiling area. You can select multiple areas for one hatch—Press the [ENTER] key to finish the comment.
 - Update the hatch fill layer to [A-LWT-SECTION]
 - Once you finish hatching, click [SAVE CHANGES] to save the block > Click [OK]



• [STEP 6] Turn on all layers

The Hatch command is to fill an enclosed area or a selected-closed object with hatch patterns or fill.

Hatch is often used to add a fill to the wall, floor, and ceiling thickness for better readability.

Moreover, the hatch is also used to add patterns on a surface to express the finishes.

In this tutorial, you will practice adding solid fills on the wall of the floor plans and RCPs. This is commonly referred to as poche. Additionally, add a hatch pattern on the wall, floor, and ceiling of the section view.

(CO 3) Create a legend for the RCPs

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=82

In your RCPs, a legend is necessary to inform what items are included, such as lighting fixtures, finishes, equipment, HVAC, and more that are used in your RCPs.

In this tutorial, you will make a lighting legend that you used in your RCPs

- [STEP 1] Find/organize the lighting fixtures that you used
 - Copy the lighting block from the RCP to an empty drawing area
 - Explode the lighting block by typing [X] and press the [ENTER] key
 - Remove all dimensions from the exploded lighting block. You can lock the [A-CLNG-FIXT] > select the dimensions > delete the selected dimensions by press the [DELETE] key, or type [ERASE] and press the [ENTER] key
 - Delete duplicated lighting fixtures. You only need one lighting fixture block of each lighting fixture type.
 - Organize the lighting fixtures vertically. You can draw a line for a reference.



- [STEP 2] Create a table with lines
 - AutoCAD offers a Table tool to create a table. You can find the tool from the [ANNOTATE] tab under the [TABLES] panel. However, this table tool is used for very complicated documents. As an interior designer with more than ten years' experience in the industry, I still use lines to create a table. Please try the table tool if you want.
 - Copy the reference line for the column lines for the table. You can use the [OFFSET] command, too.



- Draw rows with lines
- To clean up lines, use [TRIM] commands

205				
*				
	Ø			
	Ø			
	<u>9</u>			
AREA	\bigcirc			
	 000			
	0 0			
	 -			
→ 5'-0 <u>7</u> " →				

- [STEP 3] Add texts to the table
 - Make sure your drawing scale is 3/16"=1'-0."
 - $\circ~$ Type [MT] and press [ENTER] to draw a text box and add text
 - Repeat the [MTEXT] command for other text. You also can copy from what you created.



- [STEP 4] Select the table and table contents > Switch to [A-ANNO] layer
- [STEP 5] Make the table as a block [000-Lighting Legend]



SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

Chapter 6. Set sheets



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Understand Model space and Paper space (CO 2) Set a new layout – Page layout and plot styles (CO 3) Set views in Paper space – Defpoints, scaling (CO 4) Add/Edit/Draw a titleblock



At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Decture Contents

(CO I) Understand Model space and Paper space

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=84

In this tutorial, you will understand the differences between the concept of model space and the concept of paper space. AutoCAD provides two different types of drawing areas.



- Model space A limitless drawing area. You draw at a 1:1 scale.
- Paper space To prepare your drawing for printing, use paper space. Paper space is a pre-defined and set area. Please refer to the information from this link.

Clean up the CAD file

- Purge is a command to automatically removed all layers, blocks, dimension styles, and more items that are not currently used in your document. This command is a useful command to reduce the file size.
- Type [PURGE], and press [ENTER] key, select [PURGE ALL], and purge all again until the [PURGE ALL] is grayed out.

	A Parge X
	Named Objects Wew items you can purge View items you cannot purge tems not used in drawing:
Purge - Confirm Purge × → Do you want to purge block DWR Bantam Sofa 86 Plan? → Purge this item → Purge all items → Skip this item	All items Blocks Detail view style Detail
Cancel	Quertimin each item to be purged Purge rested items Unnamed Objects Purge zero-length geometry and empty text objects Automatically purge orphaned gata Purge Purge All Cigge Help

(CO 2) Set a new layout – Page setup

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=84

In this tutorial, you will understand how to set a new layout in the paper space using page setup.

Once you click [LAYOUT 1], you will see the models you made in the model space in a rectangular box. It is called a viewport.

There is a dashed line that is inside of the white space; it is called a printable area.

And the white space called a layout. Once you change the paper size to print, the layout and the printable area will change accordingly.

Update Page setup for 11in x 17 in PDF

- [STEP 1] Open Page setup manager
 - Mouse right-click on [LAYOUT 1]
 - Click [PAGE SETUP MANAGER]
 - Click [*Layout1*] and select [MODIFY] to open the Page setup
- [STEP 2] Edit Page Setup
 - Click the name of printer/plotter and switch to [DWG To PDF.pc3]
 - Update paper size to [ANSI full-bleed B (17.00 x 11.00 Inches)
 - Confirm What to plot: [LAYOUT]
 - Confirm Plot scale to [1:1]
 - Change Plot style table to [monochrome.ctb]

- Check [Display plot styles]
- Check [Landscape] for the drawing orientation
- Click [OK] Page Setup Layout 1
- Click [Close] Page Setup Manager

	Name: <none></none>	monochrome.ctb
A Page Setup Manager X	Printer/plotter	Display plot styles
Current layout: Layout1	Name: (DWG To PDF.pc3 Properties	Shaded viewport options
Page seture	Plotter: DWG To PDF - PDF ePlot - by Autodesk	Shade plot As displayed
Current page setup: <none></none>	Where: File K-17.0"->	보 Quality Normal
"Layout?" Set Current	PDF Options	T DPT 100
New	Paper size	Plot options
Modify	ANSI full bleed B (17.00 x 11.00 Inches)	Plot object lineweights
Import		Plot transparency
	Plot scale Plot scale	Plot with plot styles
Selected page setup details	Fit to paper	Plot paperspace last
Device name: None	Layout Scale: 1:1	Hide paperspace objects
Plotter: None	Plot offset (origin set to printable area) 1 Inches	Drawing orientation
Plot size: 8.50 x 11.00 inches (Landscape)	X: 0.000000 inch Center the plot	OPortrait
Description: The layout will not be plotted unless a new plotter configuration name is selected.	Y: 0.000000 inch Scale lineweights	Landscape A
Display when creating a new layout Close Hein	Preview	OK Cancel Help

• [STEP 3] Confirm the layout with an updated sheet size

Automatic save to Ci\Users\yongyeon\ApData	Local\Temp\Emes_House_Project_Yongueon_Cho_06_1_25969_Geeebbcc9, sv5	

- [STEP 4] Update the name of the sheets and add sheets
 - To update the name of sheet > mouse-right click on the tab > Click [RENAME] > Rename on the tab
 - To add a sheet > click [+] tab
 - Update the name of Layout1 to A101. A101 is for the floor plans

- Update the name of Layout2 to A102. A102 is for the furniture plans
- Add a new layout and change the name to A401. A401 is for RCPs
- Add a new layout and change the name to A601. A601 is for the section view and the elevation



- [STEP 5] Update other sheets to 11×17 PDF
 - Mouse right-click on A102
 - Open Page Setup Manger
 - Select *A101*
 - Click [Set Current]
 - Click [Close]
 - Repeat this process for A401 and A601

(CO 3) Add/Edit/Draw a titleblock

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=84

- [STEP 1] Draw a titleblock
 - Select [A101] sheet to open the sheet
 - Confirm your current layer is [0]
 - Draw a rectangle for a paper size box Type [REC], press [Enter] key > Type [0,0], press [Enter] key > Type [17",11"]. Press [Enter] key
 - Draw a titleblock outline using the paper size box Type [O], press [Enter] key > Type [1/4"], press [Enter] key > Click the inside of the sheet
 - Draw lines for the titleblock. Please refer to the image below



- [STEP 2] Add titleblock information
 - Sheet number A101
 - Project name Eames House, House
 - Your name First name and last name
 - Course number
 - Submission date

• Add text using [MT] for titleblock information. Verify the text size is 3/32". You may rotate the text 90 degrees.

- [STEP 3] Add the titleblock to other sheets
 - Click [Inset] from [Insert] tab, on [Block] panel
 - Select [000_Titleblock_11x17]
 - Type [0,0], press [Enter] key
 - Select the titleblock and the information except for the Sheet number.
 - Create a block for the selected elements Name the block [000_Titleblock_11x17]
 - Insert the titleblock to A102, A401, and A601
 - Switch the Titleblocks to [A-ANNO-TTLB]
 - Copy and modify the sheet number to A102, A401, and A601
- Now you are ready to add a titleblock on the paper space.

(CO 4) Set views in Paper space – Defpoints, scaling

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=84

Now you are ready to set the views in the sheets

- [STEP 1] Change a viewport size and the viewport layer
 - Once you click, a viewport can be changed by stretching the corner of the viewport line.

	atresognated
	dowar wante
	THAT HAVE AND LEFT
	Ann Eweld source rooter
Comand: ** STRETCH **	

• Select the viewport > switch to [Defpoints] layer. The [Defpoints] layer is set up by default as a non-plot layer.



- [STEP 2] Update the scale of the viewport
 - After changing the viewport size > double-click the viewport > Zoom in and out > Pan the view to make the view centered



- Click a scale on the application status bar, and select a desired scale for the floor plan
- If the dimensions have disappeared, click on the Show Annotation icon on the application status bar
- [STEP 3] If you want to add a new viewport, use the [MVIEW] command.
 - Type [MV], and press [Enter] > Click the first point to draw a rectangle > Click a second point to finish the rectangle. It will automatically show the drawings
 - If you have a viewport to copy, you can copy the viewport and pan the view
 - Sometimes a copied viewport will show in color. To change it to black and white, double-click the inside of the viewport > type [RE] and press [ENTER] key > double-click the outside of the viewport



- [STEP 4] Update layer visibility for the viewports
 - Open [LAYER PROPERTIES MANAGER]
 - A101 is for dimensioned floor plans. Thus, it would help if you hid the [I-FURN], [I-CASE], and [P-FIXT] layers
 - Double-click the viewport, and click [VP FREEZE] on the I-FURN], [I-CASE], and [P-FIXT] layers



- [STEP 5] Set a furniture plan sheet
 - The scale of the furniture plan is 3/16" = 1."
 - VP Freeze [A-ANNO], [A-ANNO-DIMS], [S-GRID], and [S-LEVEL]



- [STEP 6] Set an RCP sheet
 - The scale of the RCP is 3/16"= 1.'



- [STEP 7] Set a section view and elevation sheet
 - The scale of the section view is $3/16^{"}=1$.





SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

Autodesk.Help. (2020, March 29). About Model Space and Paper Space. Retrieved October 20, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/getting-started/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2019/ENU/AutoCAD-Core/files/GUID-990538B6-DDA1-4190-BCC0-BB5BA94C9879-htm.html

Chapter 7. Symbols and prints



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Add/Edit symbols in Paper spaces – drawing title, elevation symbol and section letters, north arrow (CO 2) Printing

ϔ Session Highlights

At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Decture Contents

(CO I) Add/Edit symbols in Paper spaces- drawing title, elevation symbol and section letters, north arrow

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=86

Open your AutoCAD file.

Add drawing title and scale for Floor plans, Furniture plans, RCPs, Section view, and elevation

- [STEP 1] Click [A101] sheet to open the view
- [STEP 2] Open [DESIGN CENTER]
- [STEP 3] Find [A-01.dwg] for a sample drawing title
 - Click the [HOME] icon
 - Open [Sheet Sets] > [Architectural] > [A-01.dwg]
 - Open [Blocks]
 - Double click [Drawing Title]
- [STEP 4] Add on the sheet
- [STEP 5] Double-click the inserted drawing title and edit the attribute. Adjust the title line length
- [STEP 6] Copy the edited drawing title for the 2nd-floor plan and double-click to edit the drawing title
- [STEP 7] Repeat [STEP 6] for other drawings
- [STEP 8] Update the drawing titles to the [A-ANNO] layer



Add an elevation symbol from [TOOL PALETTES]

- [STEP 1] Open [TOOL PALETTES] from [VIEW] tab, on [PALETTES]
- [STEP 2] Click [Annotation] tab from [TOOL PALETTES]
- [STEP 3] Select [CALLOUT BUBBLE IMPERIAL]
- [STEP 4] Add the symbol on the first floor
- [STEP 5] Double-click to open the attribute editor, and update information
- [STEP 6] Update scale to 0.75
- [STEP 7] Update the symbols to the [A-ANNO] layer



Add section letters with [MTEXT]

- [STEP 1] Type [MT], press [ENTER] key
- [STEP 2] Draw a text box to add the section letter
- [STEP 3] Text size update to 1/8"
- [STEP 4] Add section letter
- [STEP 5] Repeat this process for other sections
- [STEP 6] Update section letter to [A-ANNO] layer

Add north arrow with drawing tools [LINE], [CIRCLE], [MTEXT], & [HATCH]

- [STEP 1] Draw a north arrow in the paper space and make a block
- [STEP 2] Rotate the north arrow to match the information from Eames House plan images
- [STEP 3] Place the north arrow to Floor plans, Furniture plans, RCPs



(CO 2) Printing

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=86

Update the print setup for each layout

- [STEP 1] Open [PAGE SETUP MANAGER] by mouse right-click on each layout.
- [STEP 2] Click [Modify] to open [Page setup]
- [STEP 3] Plot style table is already set to Monochrome.ctb. The Monochrome style turns all layer colors to black. Since we don't want our wall, floor, and ceiling thickness to be black, we need to customize the plot style.
- [STEP 4] Click the edit button next to the name
- [STEP 5] Click [Color 9] from [PLOT STYLES] and change to [USE OBJECT COLOR]
- [STEP 6] Click [SAVE & CLOSE]
- [STEP 7] If the color is not changed automatically on your paper space, use the [REGEN] command for the views.

Proje Setup Manager Current layout: A301 Bge setups Current bage setup: chone> *A301* *A301* *Set Current	Page setup Image: ditore> Image: ditore> Printer jubitier Image: MDVG To PDF.pc3 vi Properties Potter: DVG To PDFPDF.eMotPDF.emot	Plot style table (pen assignments) monodrivane.cb Dagaty plot styles Staded viewport options Staded viewport options Stade
*4.02" *4.401" *6.601" Below Bodfy Selected page setup details	Where: File Description: PDF Options 31 Paper size AVSI full bled B (17.00 x 11.00 Inches) v	Quality Normal Color 6 Vitual pen # Automatic Image: Color 7 Quality Normal Color 7
Device name: DWG To PDF ac3 Potter: DWG To PDF Pot time: 12.00 % 11.00 m/tes (Landscape) Where: Pile Description: Deploy when creating a new layout <u>Doole</u> belo	Plot area Plot sole What to plot: The packer Usynt Scale Point (Group set to principle area) Scale Xi: 0.000000 yrd: Control Win plot Y: 0.000000 width Control Win plot	Proceedings of the set of th

Print a single sheet

- [STEP 1] Click a layout that you want to print
- [STEP 2] Press [CTRL+P] to open [PLOT]
- [STEP 3] Click [PREVIEW] from the [PLOT] window



• [STEP 4] Click [OK] > find a location to save > click [SAVE]

Print multiple sheets at once

- [STEP 1] Click [Home] button > Select [Publish] to open [PUBLISH] window
- [STEP 2] Select the drawing model if it shows, and mouse right-click > click [Remove]

No selection	- 4 + -	e			1 .	.3		3 58-7"	17.3 -+	7.37 - 7.37 -	1	
General				A Publish					+ 12+ 1			
Color Layer Linetype Linetype scale Lineweight Transparency Thickness	ByLayer 0 1.00000 ByLayer ByLayer 0"	es Managor		Sheet Lat: None Publish 50 POP BOF Presst: AutoCAD POP (General Documentation)	~ 4	Publish Options Information Location: C:Users'(vongveol/) File type: Multi-sheet file Naming: Prompt for name Layer information: Include Merge control: Lines overwrite	Xeskap)			UTLITY MM CEED TOTOLOGY MTCHEN ISSU		
3D Visualization		ted .		Automatically load all open drawings					就好十	14.02	1 2 2 3	5
Material	ByLayer	610		N. N. N. D.		Publish Options			2 DI	7 ! L	6	£
Layout		ayer.	. /			C./25 13 15 15		1017				1
Layout name Page setup name DPI to raster	A101 <none> 300</none>	-	ĨŦ	Chart Name Emms_House_Project_Yongycon_Cho_07440	Add Sheets	3D DWF Page Setup	ne> pne>	V No errors		DNING RM	A 40	1
Plot style				Eames_House_Project_Yongyeon_Cho_07-A1	Load List		one>	Vio errors	- % -			
Plot style	HyColor	1		Eames House Project_rongveon_Cho_07-A4 Eames House Project Yangveon Cho 07-65	Save cite		ane>	No errors	-			
Plot style table Plot table attached to Plot table type	monochrome.ctb A101 Color dependent		0		Remove Remote Ha		1		1		•	
View					Move <u>Up</u>				1	1	4	
Center X Center Y Center Z Height Width	8 1/2" 5 1/2" 0" 11 3/32" 1:4 3/8"			< Selected Sheet Details Source drawing Eames_House_Project_Yongve	Move Down Bename Sheet Change Dage Se Gopy Selected S	tup heets	ndude plo	tstano 🙎		6.7 7.6 1	A LOD ART MARK	
Misc				Drawing location C: Users lyongyeon (OneDrive - V	Include Layouts	When Adding Sheets	history	ationant III	-		1	£
Annotation scale UCS icon On UCS icon at origin UCS per viewport	1.1 Yés No Yes	distances		Plot device Overnide: DWG To PDF Plot size 8:50 x 11.00 indhes (Landscape) Plot sizie Scaled to Fit Plot sizie Scaled to Fit	None	When Adding Sheets	TOpen in ye	wei sihen dooe	Ţ	h Destass AREA h		
UCS Name Visual Style	2D Wireframe	External R	â	▲ Hyde Details	_	Bublish	0	ncel tielp	A		A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	
		1 K			1/		1	BEDRM	- 85 - 23	ther is in mit		11

- [STEP 3] Click [PUBLISH]
- [STEP 4] Specify the file location to save > click [SELECT]
- [STEP 5] If you want to save the current list of sheets for later use, click [Yes]
- [STEP 6] Click [close], once a processing background job window popup
- [STEP 7] Wait until the completion message comes

Plot and Publish Job Complete X No errors or warnings found <u>Click to view plot and publish details</u>
& Annotation - + 2 🔯 🖓 😫 💌 😑

SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

PART TWO. REVIT

Chapter 8. Introduction to Revit

- Purpose of using Revit How & Why Interior Design uses Revit
- Install Revit
- Understand Project Templates Default and Own
- Save Revit file Set the project folder and backup file
- Open an existing project file
- Keyboard shortcuts
- Understand the User Interface Toolbar, Properties, Drawing area, Option bar, and Project Browser

Chapter 9. Create a Site

- Understand the site plan and information
- Set the project location and understand building base point
- Find GIS information
- Add & Edit Site Topo surface, roads, side works, property line, building pod, surrounding buildings, and trees
- Define true north and project north

Chapter 10. Set Grids, Levels, Dimensions, & Building columns

- Import CAD drawings Floor plans, building elevations, and sections
- Adjust and verify the scale
- Create and modify grids and levels
- Create plan views- Floors and ceilings
- Create columns with dimensions

Chapter 11. Add/Edit Beam, Walls, & Curtain Walls

- Add/Edit Beam
- Create walls
- Edit walls wall properties Wall thickness, Wall details, & Finishes
- Edit/add wall properties Wall opening, wall sweep
- Add/Edit Curtainwalls, Mullions, & Panels
Chapter 12. Understand Visibility settings, Add/Edit Floor & Ceiling

- Understand View template, visibility graphics
- Understand View range
- Add/Edit Floors & Floor Properties
- Add/Edit Ceilings & Ceiling Properties

Chapter 13. Add/Edit Stairs, Rails, & Roof

- Add/Edit Stair three types of staircases
- Add/Edit Railing
- Add/Edit Roof

<u>Chapter 14. Add/Edit Windows, Doors, Lighting Fixtures, Furniture, Tags, &</u> <u>Sheets</u>

- Understand the concept of family file
- Add/Edit Doors and Windows
- Add Tags
- Add/Edit Lighting fixtures
- Add/Edit Titleblocks
- Insert Plan views and symbols North arrow and graphic scale

Chapter 15. Add/Edit Model-in-Place Components & Edit Family

- Add/Edit Furniture families
- Add/Edit Model-in-place components Custom casework
- Add/Edit a New Family Furniture

Chapter 16. Add/Edit Elevation, Section, Detail, Text, Annotation, & Rooms

- Add/Edit Elevations & Sections Adjust crop region
- Add/Edit Detail views
- Add Texts & Annotations
- Add/Edit Rooms, Room tags, Room separators
- Add/Edit a color fill scheme

Chapter 17. Add/Edit Views, Lighting, & Materials

- Set perspective views
- Set Isometric views
- Edit Views Graphic Display styles
- Test Render
- Set sun
- Edit Artificial lighting
- Add/Edit materials
- Render material managements

Chapter 18. Create Revit Rendering, Revit Clouding Rendering

- Insert other types of files Sketchup, AutoCAD
- Advanced render settings
- Edit render qualities
- Understand and make cloud renderings
- Save Rendering outputs

Chapter 8. Introduction to Revit



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Purpose of using Revit - How & Why Interior Design uses Revit

(CO 2) Install Revit

- (CO 3) Understand Project Templates Default and Own
- (CO 4) Save Revit file Set the project folder and backup file
- (CO 5) Open an existing project file
- (CO 6) Keyboard shortcuts
- (CO 7) Understand the User Interface Toolbar, Properties, Drawing area, Option bar, and Project Browser

👻 Session Highlights

At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.

REPHON	· · · · · /	0 A 8 · ? 📰 🛛 🖻]• =		Autodesk Revit	1.2021					· 89.2	Sign In • 🗑 🕐 •	- # ×
Modify Select •	Vindow Component C	Massing & See Collaborate	View Manage Add- Curtain Curtain Mullion System Grid	Ins Modify	adel Model Model Roc Iest Line Group Model	am Roam T Separator Ro Ro	Tag , Area com & Area *	Tag By Shaf	t Wall Vertical Dommer	and Grid Set Deturn	Show Ref Plane Work Plane	Viewer	
Paperties Paperties Paperties Paperties Paperties Paperties Paperties Paperties Papertie		E teel 1 X	Đ						Ą	1		Next Biomer + Project © (Next Set) Pror Res Level 3 Set Cellog Pres - Level 1 - Level 2 - Set Cellog Pres - Level 3 - Set -	×
Properties help Click to select, TAB for altern	Apply lates, CTRL adds, SHIFT unsa	18" = 1"4" 🗆 🗗 🔽 48 lects.	1.00 0 00 FB (_	â			े के 🛅 🔍 Main	Model	2	3 _	⊒₫ጷ₫ጚ⊃⊽«	

Decture Contents

(CO I) Purpose of using Revit – How & Why Interior Design uses Revit

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=88

Introduction of Revit, a BIM (Building Information Model) software

- Charles River Software originally developed the software in 1997, renamed Revit Technology Corporation in 2000, and acquired by Autodesk in 2002.
- Autodesk Revit is BIM software for Architects, Interior Designer, Landscape Architects, Structural Engineers, MEP Engineers, Contractors, and more.
- Revit can be used as a very powerful collaboration tool among different disciplines in the Architecture, Engineering, and Construction (AEC) industry.



image credit: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Revit.jpg

- Revit has a huge library for modeling in the software itself and supports plug-ins, advanced data management systems, and energy modeling analysis.
- Revit modeling process is complicated and not easy for a first-time user.
- Software required better hardware, 40% more expensive than Autodesk CAD but higher productivity.
- For architects and interior designers, the software is being used to create construction documents.

- Most of the commercial interior design/architectural design firms use Revit.
- Not much of renderings features, but support Virtual Reality plugins.
- Collaborate with CAD drawing users.

(CO 2) Install Revit

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=88

Install Autodesk Revit

- [STEP 1] Go to https://www.autodesk.com/education/free-software/revit on your window side in a web browser.
- [STEP 2] Click [CREATE ACCOUNT] if you do not have one. If you have the account, please sign in.
- [STEP 3] Click [Get product] under Revit.
- [STEP 4] Select, windows, 2021, and English. Click [INSTALL].
- [STEP 5] Accept the license and services agreement.
- [STEP 6] You will get an email from Autodesk for the license information (Product key and Serial Number). It may need the information for the activation process.
- [STEP 7] Click Install.
- [STEP 8] Click downloaded installation file to install.
- [STEP 9] Setup Initialization will download actual software to install it will take time.
- [STEP 10] While you are installing Select the "Architecture" discipline in the drop-down menu.
- [STEP 11] After installation, the license information required to activate Revit.

(CO 3) Understand Project Templates – Default and Own

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=88

Open Revit by double-clicking the Revit Icon.

Once the application opens you can see the HOME page. From the home page, you can open recent project files and recent family files. Also, you can create a new project file or a new family file.

Create a new project file with Architecture Template.

- [STEP 1] Click [NEW] under Models on the left side of the Home page
- [STEP 2] Click [Imperial-Construction Template] and select [Imperial-Architectural Template]
- [STEP 3] Click [OK] to create a new project file.

(\bullet)	Recent Files				
MODELS	MODELS				
Dpen	New Project	R Choose Template			
D New	Template fie	Look in:	English-Imperial		÷
	Imperial-Architectural Template Srowse	2 A	Name	Date	Туре
AMILIES			Commercial-Default.rte	1/17/2020 2:39 PM	Autode
	Create new	History	Construction-Default.rte	1/17/2020 2:39 PM	Autod
Dpen	Project OProject template		adefault.rte	1/17/2020 2:39 PM	Autod
			Electrical-Default.rte	1/17/2020 2:38 PM	Autod
New .	OK Cannel Help	Departments	LT_USI_Commercial-Default.rte	1/17/2020 2:41 PM	Autod
			LT_USI_Default.rte	1/17/2020 2:41 PM	Autode
	011_3010 chair 01 13.1.cecture Revic Reliuel		LT_USI_Residential-Default.rte	1/17/2020 2:41 PM	Autod
		Hy Completer	Mechanical-Default.rte	1/17/2020 2:39 PM	Autod
		20 A	Plumbing-Default.rte	1/17/2020 2:42 PM	Autod
Decent Files	FAMILIES	S	Precast Detailing-Default.rte	1/23/2020 2:37 PM	Autode
B Accentines		My Network	Residential-Default.rte	1/17/2020 2:39 PM	Autode
		and the second se	Structural Analysis-Default.rte	1/17/2020 2:42 PM	Autod

If you are working on a specific project like a residential building or a commercial project, there are more templates that Autodesk supports. To open the template, you can click [BROWSE]. And see what template is appropriate for your project.

Additionally, you can also create a project template for your firm. Many firms already created/use their own template (called a seed file) to save time and resources to develop their construction documents.

(CO 4) Save Revit file – Set the project folder and backup file

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=88

Saving a file must be a friend of yours. Once you create a new file you must save the Revit file first and work on it later.

Save a file for the first time

- [STEP 1] Click [FILE] tab
- [STEP 2] Select [SAVE AS] from the file menu
- [STEP 3] Select [Project] under the menu



• [STEP 4] Find a folder location to save. If you do not have a folder, you can create a folder by pressing [ALT+5]. it is recommended to have a project folder to save the project Revit file. You also save other family files (e.g. Furniture, lighting family that you downloaded) and material images that you found under the project folder. You may draw and drop the folder to the left side of the browser for future use.

Save As							?	2
Sav	ve in:	2020 ISU-m	nini-grant		Y	🔶 🛃 🗙	📮 Vi	iews
	1	tia-le.	^	Date modified	Туре	Size		
	16	- 0_Mode	ule	8/10/2020 1:28 PM	File folder			
History		200_Prop	osal	6/4/2020 2:30 PM	File folder			
		Ol_Auto	CAD	8/16/2020 5:33 PM	File folder			
		002 Revit)	8/19/2020 8:32 PM	File folder			
ocuments		003_Ensca	ape	8/19/2020 8:33 PM	File folder			
		100_Recei	ived	7/14/2020 10:03 AM	File folder			
y Computer								
Libraries		File <u>n</u> ame:	Eames_House_Project_	Yongyeon_Cho_08		~		
-	*	Files of type:	Project Files (*.rvt)			~	Option	IS
						C	- 1	4

Tip, I strongly recommend having an external hard drive to save files. If your laptop hard disk is full, your hardware

performance will be drastically reduced. To prevent this, your working file should be saved in an external hard disk. For extra safety, it is recommended to use Cloud file storage to save files.

- [STEP 5] Open a folder to save and make a unique name for the project.
- [STEP 6] Before you click [SAVE], you may consider saving a backup file by clicking [OPTIONS]. Revit will automatically make backup project files. It is safe to have the backup files, but it will take time for the automatic backup file while you work on it. You may set the number of backup files (default is 20) by open [Option] in the save as browser. 5 backup files might be enough.

save in:	08_Revit_01			🗶 📮 Views
History History Ocuments 02_Revit Computer Network	Name Screenshots	File Save Options * Maximum backups: 5 Worksharing	lder	
	Ein mannet Epr	1	~	

Save a file while working or end of the work

- [STEP 1] Click [FILE] tab
- [STEP 2] Select [SAVE] or simply press [CTRL + S]

(CO 5) Open an existing project file

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=88

Revit has 2 ways to open your project file.

The first method is just double-clicking your Revit project file.

The second method is opening a file in the application. I recommend this second option due to reducing errors that you might have, especially, while you are sharing a file with your co-workers.

- [STEP 1] Open the Revit software
- [STEP 2] Click [File] on the tab
- [STEP 3] Click [Open] on the file tab
- [STEP 4] Select the file that you want to open under the folder
- [STEP 5] Click [Open] to open the file

(CO 6) Keyboard shortcuts

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=88

To increase productivity, I recommend you become familiar with the following keyboard shortcuts.

- MV Move
- TL Thin Line
- VV Visibility
- ZE Zoom All to fit
- WT Tile Views
- TW Tab Views
- DI Aligned Dimension
- DL Detail Line
- CO Copy
- RO Rotate
- MA Match type properties
- AL Align
- PT Paint

For more information regarding shortcuts <u>https://www.autodesk.com/shortcuts/revit</u>

(CO 7) Understand the User Interface – Toolbar, Properties, Drawing area, Option bar, and Project Browser

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=88 Revit's user interface is similar to AutoCAD's one including an icon with text, and wording.

ect -	Window Composent Co	Aumon Roof Cetting Floor Curtain Curtain Mullion Build	Raing Ramp Stair Biddel Model Medel Active Comp Search Tag Area Tag By Room Conclusion Model Search Room Room Room Search Room	Shaft Wall Vertical Dormer Orid Set Show Ref Depening Datum Work Plan	Viéwer a
oerties.	×	P level 1 X			Project Browser - Project2
Floor Plan			Ģ	e alla	[0] Wews (all) Floor Plans Level 1 Level 2
or Plan: Level 1	→ Eli Edit Type		*	Sh Sh	Ste
ohics					() Ceiling Plans
ew Scale	1/8" = 1"-0"			1	- Level 1
sle Villae 11:	95				Level 2
play Model	Normal				E Elevations (Building Elevation)
tail Level	Coarse				E-851 Nieuth
ts Visibility	Show Original				South
dity/Graphics Over	Edit				West
thic Display Options	Edit				I Legends
station	Project North				Schedules/Duantities (all)
Join Display	Clean all wall joins				Ell'h Sheets (all)
pline .	Architectural				(E) [JT] Families
Cohome Location	Backensored				a loi Groups
V Scheme Location	Background				- Revit Links
olt Anabaia Displac	Scone*				
Path				_	
PROP	RTIES		DRAWING AREA		PROJECT
net Base Level	None		DINAMING ANEA		Thoseet
at Top Gevel	Unbounded				PROWCER
riay Orientation	Look down				DROWSEN
	R				
View	0				
Region Visible	0				
tation Crop	0				
Range	Edit_				
cisted Level	(ave)1				
e Bax	None				
h Clipping	No clip				
ty Data	8				
Template	<none></none>				
Name	Level 1				
ndency	Insependent				
in sheet					
rencing sneet					
encing ivefail					
19 6 (Trail	Show All		A		
e rindi	New Construction				
	THEM S OTDER DELIVERT				

You may change the location of Properties and Project Browser to expand more drawing area.



You also can change the Ribbon panel size by clicking the minimize panel button.



If you accidentally close Properties or Project Browser, you can open with [User Interface] Select [VIEW] tab > Click [USER INTERFACE] > Check the box to open.



image credit: Screen captured and modified by the Author from the application

In the ribbon, you will find many tools for your work.

• Architecture

File	Architecture	insert	Annotate A	nalyze Mas	sing & Site	Collabora	te View	Manage	Add-Ins	Modify	••																
Ð	00] 🔳	Ø	0	P	96			1	0	O	A	11	[6]	X			X		X	認問		\$	- 2 sff		歌口	F
Modify	Wall D	oor Windo	w Component	Column	Roof C	eiling Floo	Curtain System	Curtain Mull Grid	ion Railin	g Ramp	Stair	Model Text	Model	Model Group	Room	Room Separator	Tag Room	Area	Aren Beunstary	Tag . Area	By Shaft Face	Wall Vertical	Dormer	Grid Grid	Set	Show Ref Plane	Viewer
College and the				B. 4	1.4					ALCONDON.			A Read Laboration				D	Sec. 1				Contraction of the second		D		Idda id the an	

Insert

File	Archite	ture	Insert	Annotate	Analyze	Mas	sing & Si	ite Collabo	rate	View	Manage	Add	-Ins I	Vodify		•		
A	RVT	8	CAD	2	and the second s	Ð	(0.0 (0.0 (0.0 (0.0))		PDF				PDF			믯	[7]	
Modify	Link Revit	Link IFC	Link CAD	Link Topography	DWF Markup	Decal	Point Cloud	Coordination Model	Link PDF	Link Image	Manage Links	Import CAD	Import PDF	Import Image	Load Family	Get Autodesk Content	Load as Group	Insert from File
Select -						Link						1	mport	ĸ		Load from	n Library	

• Annotate

File	Architecture	Insert	Annotate	Analyze	Massing &	Site Col	laborate	View	Manage	Add-Ins	Modify																		
B	XH	1	K	0.	7 0	~⊕	7	\mathcal{I}		Ð	3	[A]	8	A	ABC	11 A	01	1	R	18		-03	3 Al	13	E		4	1	
Modify	Aligned Linear	Angula	r Radial D	iameter Le	Arc Spot ngth Elevation	Spot Coordinat	Spot te Slope	Detail Line	Region	Component	Revision Cloud	Detail Group	_ Insulation	Tet	Check Spelling	Find/ Replace	Tag by Category	Tag All	Multi- Category	Material Tag	Tag Tag	n View Reference	Tread Number	Keynote	Color Fill Legend	Symbol	Span Direction	Beam	Stair Path
Select *				imension						Det	teil				Text						Tag +				Color Fill		Symb	al.	

• Analyze

	File	Architecture	Insert	Annotate	Analyze	Massing	& Site	Collaborate	View	Manage	Add-Ins	Modify	
	↓ Modify	Location Sy	stem-Zone	Create	Systems	Generate	Optimize	Energy	Path of	Reveal			
				Energy Mod	el Analysis			Settings	Travel	Obstacles			
100	Select -			Energy	Optimizatio	on			Route	Analysis 🛛			

• Massing & site

F	ile	Architecture	Insert	Annot	ate /	Analyze	Massi	ng & Si	te C	ollaborate	View Mana	ge Add-In	s Modit	fy G	•				
	6	U					J	0		5	\triangle			X	2	5	5	4	50
М	odify	Show Ma by View Set	ass tings *	In-Place Mass	Place Mass	Curtain System	Roof	Wall	Floor	Toposurface	Site Component	Parking Component	Building Pad	Split Surface	Merge Surfaces	Subregion	Property Line	Graded Region	Label Contours
Sel	ect 🔻	Cor	nceptua	Mass		N	/lodel b	y Face			Model Si	te	ы			Mod	ify Site		

• Collaborate

File	Architecture	Insert Annotate	Analyze	Massing & Site	Collaborate	View	Manage	Add-Ins	Modify	••						
G	5	22 08	Active	Vorkset:	-	6	00			3	D	80	- <u>\</u>		B	a
Modify	Editing Requests	Collaborate Workse	ets of Gra	y Inactive Worksets		Synchronizi with Ceritra	E Reload	Relinguish All Mine	Worksharin Monitor	g Show Restor History Backup	e Manage Cloud Model	Publish Settings	Copy/ Monitor	Coordination Review	Reconcile Hosting	Interference Check
Select	Communicate	1	Manage Co	llaboration			Synch	ironize 🔻		Man	age Models 👻			Coord	linate	

• View

File	Architecture	Insert	Annotate	Analyze	Massing & Site	Collabor	ite Vi	ew Manage	Add-Ins	Modify		•																
D	B	G	R		B		0	× 🛍	0	9	0°	3			P.	010		希	3	hC)	E A	H ED	-02		ij	Ē.	BC	
Modify	View Templates	Visibility Graphics	Filters This	Show Hidden L	Remove ines Hidden Lines	Cut s Profile	laritar 1 je	Render Render Cloud Gallery	JD View*	Section 1	Callout	Plan . Views	Elevation	Drafting View	Duplicate, View	Legends	Schedules	Scope Box	Sheet		Revisions	Genter Matchline	Reference	/import-	Switch Windows	Class	Tab Tile Yews Views	User Interface
Select a			Gian	hitt			Dee	instation .						Tenhola .							Chie	Complifies				MLC.	admin	

• Manage

File	Arc	hitecture	Insert	Annotate	Analyze	Massing & Site	Collaborate	· View	Manage	Add-Ins	Modify														
D	+ (38	8 N	ß			0	193	1	00	B	0	K.	B		E materier	886	22	1	1 4	4-	In the second	5	1	
Mod	sily M	aterials Of	bject Snaps	Project	Project	Shared	Global	Transfer	Purge	Project	Additional	Location	Coordinates	Position	Design		Create	Explore	Manage Decal Sta	ting Phas	es	and select of in	Macro Ma	acro	Dynamo Dynamo
		St	tyles	Information	n Paramete	rs Parameters P	Parameters Proj	ject Standa	rds Unused	Units	Settings				Options	Main Model	* Study O	utcomes	Links Types V	EW	Edit	All Warms	Manager Sec	unity	Player
Selec	1 *					Settia	NOS.						Project Locatio			Design Options	Generativ	e Desian	Manage Project	Phac	na Selection	Inquiry	Macant		Asual Programming

• Add-Ins

File	Architecture Inse	rt Annotate	Analyze	e Massing & Site	Collaborate	View	Manage	Add-Ins	Modify	•	
G Modif	Transmit a model	Help About Impo	RE Formit	Convert RFA							
		to	RVT	to FormIt							
Select	 eTransmit 		Formit Co	onverter							

• Modify

File	Architecture	Insert	Annotate	Analyze	Massing & Site	Collaborate	View Man	age Add-l	ns Modify 🛋 🔹
↓ Modify		Paste B	Cope				● ● ⁴ × 맘 □ ₽ 귀 궮 ×	日本 日本 日本 日本	
Select -	Properties	Clipboard	Ge	eometry		Modify		View	Measure Create

For more information regarding the user interface, please read this page

SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

Aynazinsaat. (2016). Azərbaycanca: Revit Architecture. Retrieved October 20, 2020, from <u>https://commons.wikimedia.org/</u>wiki/File:Revit.jpg

Revit Keyboard Shortcuts, Hotkeys & Commands Guide. (n.d.). Retrieved October 21, 2020, from <u>https://www.autodesk.com/shortcuts/revit</u>

Autodesk.Help. (2020, April 14). Parts of the User Interface. Retrieved October 20, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/revit-products/getting-started/caas/CloudHelp/2019/ENU/Revit-GetStarted/files/GUID-7793667D-5657-4382-9BEC-F7CB6AC8F53E-htm.html</u>

Chapter 9. Create a site



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Understand the site plan and information

(CO 2) Set the project location and understand building base point

(CO 3) Import google maps and define true north & project north

(CO 4) Find GIS information

(CO 5) Add & Edit Site - Topo surface, roads, side works, property line, building pod, surrounding buildings, and trees

👻 Session Highlights

At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Decture Contents

(CO I) Understand the site plan and information

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=90

The site plan is an architectural plan of proposed improvements to a given lot. A site plan usually shows a building footprint, travel ways, parking, and landscaping and garden elements (Department of Building and Development Land Development, 2009).



image credit: Archibald & Fraser Architects Ltd. - Wikimedia Commons - File: Lochaber Centre Site Plan.jpg

A site plan is a "set of construction drawings that a building or contractor uses to make improvements to the property. Counties can use the site plan to verify that development codes are being met and as a historical resource. Site plans are often prepared by a design consultant who must be either a licensed engineer, architect, landscape architect, or land surveyor" (Chesterfield County, 2009).

A site plan is a top view of a property that is drawn to scale. A site plan can show

- Property lines
- Outline of existing and proposed building and structures
- Parking lots, indicating parking spaces
- Driveways
- Surrounding streets
- Landscaping areas
- Terrains

(CO 2) Set the project location and understand building base point

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=90

Draw the building footprint for the site plan



- [STEP 1] Acknowledge the overall size of the building.
 - The size of the house part of the Eames House project is 58'-7" x 20'-4."
- [STEP 2] Select [WALL] from [ARCHITECTURE] tab, under [Build] panel
 - Or, Type [WA] on your keyboard
 - Draw only overall exterior walls on level 1
 - Make sure your walls are [Project North] on the [Properties] palette.
 - Confirm the wall is Basic Wall/Generic-8", Unconnected Height 20' 0."

- [STEP 3] Draw the building footprint
 - Click a drawing area
 - Move the mouse to the right-side
 - Enter 58'7" on your keyboard > press [ENTER] key
 - Move your mouse to the down-side
 - Enter 20'4" on your keyboard > press [ENTER] key
 - Move your mouse to the left-side
 - Click the third point and forth to create the building
- [STEP 4] Move the elevation symbols closer to the close the building
 - Select one elevation symbol
 - Type [MV]
 - And click one point and move the mouse and click the target point to complete the command.
 - Repeat this process to other elevation symbols

Set the project location

This setting is for sun orientation and weather information



- [STEP 1] Select [LOCATION] from [MANAGE] tab, under [PROJECT LOCATION]
- [STEP 2] Enter the project address (Eames House address is 203 N. Chautauqua Blvd. Pacific Palisades, CA) and Select [SEARCH]
- [STEP 3] Select a Weather Station near the project location
- [STEP 4] Click [OK[to complete the command

(CO 3) Import google maps and define true north & project north

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=90

Save site information from Google Map

- [STEP 1] Open your web browser and go to [GOOGLE MAP] <u>https://www.google.com/maps</u>
- [STEP 2] Search the address [for Eames House project, 203 N. Chautauqua Blvd. Pacific Palisades, California]
- [STEP 3] Use [Snipping tool] (search Snipping tool from your program list) Screenshot must include the building, and the property line, and the scale on the bottom left corner. For your drawing accuracy, I recommend saving both the map image and the satellite map image.



image credit: search result from Google map

• [STEP 4] Save the snipped image file in JPG file format in your project folder

Insert site information from google map

- [STEP 1] Open [SITE] plan by double-clicking from the [PROJECT BROWSER]
- [STEP 2] Move the project origin to the building bottom left corner
- [STEP 3] Change the orientation to [TRUE NORTH]



- [STEP 4] Select [IMPORT IMAGE], from [INSERT] tab
- [STEP 5] Open the project folder and select the google map and click [OPEN]
- [STEP 6] Click on the center of the drawing area
- [STEP 7] Repeat this process for the satellite map



Adjust the scale of the imported google map

- [STEP 1] Select the two imported maps by crossing selection
- [STEP 2] Click [SCALE] from [MODIFY/RASTER IMAGE] tab, under [MODIFY] panel or, Type [RE] for adjusting the scale
- [STEP 3] Zoom-in to find the graphic scale on the bottom right side of the map

- [STEP 4] Click 0ft click 50 ft type 50' Enter
- [STEP 5] Move the imported raster maps to be centered



Adjust the orientation of the imported google maps according to the building footprint

- [STEP 1] Select the imported google maps
- [STEP 2] Select [ROTATE] from [MODIFY] tab, under [MODIFY] panel Or, Type [RO] on your keyboard
- [STEP 3] Select [PLACE]
- [STEP 4] Click the base point to rotate, click an appropriate point to rotate. Remember how many degrees you rotated (for Eames House, 75.56 clockwise)



- [STEP 5] Relocate the imported google maps, if needed
- [STEP 6] Select only the satellite map > click [SEND TO BACK] from [MODIFY/RASTER IMAGE] under [ARRANGE] panel
- [STEP 7] Select the project base origin
- [STEP 8] Click [ANGLE TO TRUE NORTH]
- [STEP 9] Type [-75.56], and press [ENTER] key (for Eames House, we rotated the google images to 75.56 clockwise, so you need to re-rotate the origin to 75.56 counter-clock-wise)



• [STEP 10] Change the view to [PROJECT NORTH] from the [PROPORTIES] to check the plan rotated the right-way.

File Architecture	Insert Annotate Analys	e Massing & Sit	Collaborate	View Manage A	dd-Ins Modify 💿	•							
Modify Select +	Window Component (olumn Roof	ceiling Floor	Curtain Curtain Mullion System Grid	Railing Ramp Stair Circulation	Model Model Model Text Line Group Model	Room Room	Tag Area Room Room & Area	Arry Tag Broundary Area	By Shaft Face	Wall Vertical Dormer	Datum	Set Show Ref Viewer Plane Work Plane
Properties		< Fi Level 1	[7] Site	×									
- opposite -		· ALL MARKET	NY SCA										(D)
Floor Plan			1 CO	1.1			men	MORE COOM	a. 10				9
Floor Plan: Site	✓ BH Edit Typ		F.				1000		2				10
Granhier			1										
View Scale	1' = 20'-0'	1	10										0
Scale Value 1	240	-	10										
Dirolay Model	Normal	-	- V (D			201						
Detail Level	Corrie	-	1.0	30			10						
Parte Vicibility	Show Original		1.0	B			Del						
Visibility/Graphics Overr.	Ede		V	5			ALC: N						
Graphic Display Options	Ede		1				100						
Orientation	Project North	1	100										
Wall Join Display	Clean all wall toins		1										
Discipline	Architectural	-	1										
Show Hidden Lines	By Discipline	-						Corona Dal	a.				
Color Scheme Location	Background	-							with.				
Color Scheme	<none></none>	-		1		C	-						
Default Analysis Display	None	-		1				142					
Sun Path		-		1				24					
Underlay		E		10			~ 0	36					
Range: Base Level	None	1		1 8				100					
Range: Top Level	Unbounded	-		13									
Underlay Orientation	Look down			35									
Extents		1		F G									
Crop View		7						9					
Crop Region Visible	ň							2	0				
Annotation Crop	n	-						(Prince)					
View Range	Edit	-		8	Chautaugus pi				2				
Associated Level	Level 1	-		e.	and BUA				No.				
Scope Box	None			1 *		Char -			1				
Depth Clipping	No clip			1		"Ollar			-				
Identity Data				1		Blyd							
View Template	<none></none>	1											
View Name	Site						- 04						
Dependency	Independent			10	N	35	Mar and						
Title on Sheet				1	95	and D	A cup	14		Chan .			
Referencing Sheet				L	and a second	013		10		anav.			
Referencing Detail				1	0 0	3.	1			All Of Black	1		
Phasing		2		E			14	Chainton	The second s	· · · ·	0		
Phase Filter	Show All			E	10 A		-	-iqu	-qua Bird				
Phase	New Construction			F	4° Cx	e	and a						
				P	10	AVR. 3	40 Para						

• [STEP 11] Change the view to [TRUE NORTH] from the [PROPORTIES] for the site plan



Crop the view to only the site plan area

- [STEP 1] Select [CROP VIEW] and [CROP REGION VISIBLE] from the [PROPERTIES] panel
- 127 | Revit Session 2

• [STEP 2] Adjust the region for the view



(CO₄) Find GIS information

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=90

In this tutorial, we will find GIS information from CADMAPPER

- [STEP 1] Open your web browser, go to <u>https://cadmapper.com/</u>
- [STEP 2] Sign up for free if you don't have an account. Sign on the website.
- [STEP 3] Enter the project address [203 N. Chautauqua Blvd. Pacific Palisades, CA] and search
- [STEP 4] Adjust the area for your project by zooming in and changing the selected area. It is free up to 1 km2
- [STEP 5] Click [CREATE FILE] to generate the 3D model



image credit: Screen captured from <u>www.cadmapper.com</u>

• [STEP 6] You can see the preview for your confirmation. Click [DOWNLOAD]



image credit: Screen captured from <u>www.cadmapper.com</u>

• [STEP 7] Once the download is done, open the folder to extract the zip file



image credit: Screen captured from <u>www.cadmapper.com</u>

• [STEP 8] Extract the zip file

	GADMAPPER	Free City Files Help Account My Download	ads New Map	
Celit MAP Man near Santa Monica, California, US	Image: Provide the state of the st	Downloads -	- ¤ ×	
Map Indai Saha molince, camonine, OS Hei Type Aufoca OX98: Area 119 sm ² Bestoryer: Tsi A seth neget value (99%) Topography. Included, 3.74 m isover se level Settings: Road cententines, 3.00 buildings, 3 m controls Settings: Road cententines, 3.00 buildings, 3 m controls Settings: Road cententines, 30 buildings, 3 m controls DOWNLOAD (20 3 KB) Provide Controls of the control of th	Image: Construction Outland access Oracle access Open Open </td <td>Pownieds v. 6</td> <td></td> <td>San Cal Can</td>	Pownieds v. 6		San Cal Can
🚹 cadmapper-santapip 🔿				Show all X

• [STEP 9] Copy the files to your project folder and read the License.txt file before you use the file



- [STEP 10] Open the LEVEL 1 view
- [STEP 11] Click [IMPORT CAD], from [INSERT] tab, under [IMPORT] panel
- [STEP 12] Open the project folder, change the file type to [DXF files], change colors to [Black and White], change Import units to [meter], Click [OPEN]

Select +	Los Los Marine	The second secon	a woodry Cart	Internet internet					
Poprise Page Parc Level 1 Graphic Level 1 Graphic State Scale Value 1 Dagsty Model Deal Level Parts Valobly Valisity/Graphics Over- Graphic Dupley Options Oneration Show Fiddem Linet Show Fiddem Linet Show Fiddem Linet Show Fiddem Linet Show Fiddem Linet Show Fiddem Linet	✓ Ell fait Type (1) = 1:3 ² (2) = 1:3 ² (2) (2		Inspect CAD Formers Look Int Heart CAD Formers Look Int Heart CAD Sectorers Sectorers Sectorers Sectorers Sectorers Sectorers	Levit dinapper-sate monice-cellonia-us.	Dermodfied Ty M B7257000 1123 AM Ar	recess Process unicCAD D	af Nesi 3. ×		Project Browner: Enner, House, Project, Y. SQ: Verse (st) Prove Parks Carloy Parks Carloy Parks Carloy Parks Carloy Parks Carloy Parks Dever 1 Ent Love 1 Ent Ent South Subley South Subley Ent South Subley South Subley Subl
Johney Mondey Range Day Lend Tange Day Lend Underlar Orientation Farers Londraft Orientation Crop Rogon Vable Anontation Crop View Rango Associated Invel Scopt Bay Mascritted Invel Scopt Bay Depth Claping Heat Part View Name Depth Opting View Tempts View Tempts View Tempts View Tempts View Tempts View Tempts Part of the Participation Part of the Participation Part of the Part	Noon Unioundial Look down Carden Card I Noon Noon Near Cent I Walgemented Show All Nee Construction		Connect View ovly	name, adingpor enta nonce califor france: Dat Files (* dot) Califordi (files and trins. Layent funds: Jai begot traits (and Caneet lives t	Packof Packor Dances Dances Dances Dances Dances Packor Pa	> v v v v v v v v v v v v v	Canol		
Properties help Ready	witte	uer-rer ⊡ ଗୀରି ଭେଇଥି ରେ ବାରେ ଲୋଇ ଏ		<i>th</i>		Main Model	~	•	

- [STEP 13] Move the imported CAD site information to the site. To move the map, you have to unpin before you move the site.
- [STEP 14] Switch the view to [SITE] view, Uncheck [CROP VIEW] from [PROPERTIES]
- [STEP 15] Rotate the imported CAD site map to match the imported GOOGLE MAP (75.56 degrees clockwise)
- [STEP 16] Move the imported CAD site map to match the imported GOOGLE MAP.
 - To move correctly, you can switch the graphic display option to [WIREFRAME]
 - Refer to other building locations and road locations to get the right location aligned



- [STEP 17] Open [WEST] view
- [STEP 18] Move the imported CAD site map to match the building level 1
 - You can type the Base Offset or manually move to match



(CO 5) Add & Edit Site – Topo surface, roads, side works, property line, building pod, surrounding buildings, and trees

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=90

Create a TOPO SURFACE

Note, Building sight might be completely flat or with little level change. Please try the TOPO SURFACE tool to make the site model.

- [STEP 1] Select [TOPOSURFACE], from [MASSING & SITE] under [MODEL SITE]
- [STEP 2] Select [CREATE FROM IMPORT], from [MODIFY/EDIT SURFACE] under [TOOLS]
- [STEP 3] Select [SELECT IMPORT INSTANCE]
- [STEP 4] Select the imported CAD site map
- [STEP 5] Only check [COUNTOURS] from the ADD POINTS FROM SELECTED LAYERS] window



• [STEP 6] Adjust point locations if needed



• [STEP 7] Click the green check to complete the topo surface tool

Edit TOPO SURFACE

- [STEP 1] If you want to edit the topo surface, select the topography and select [EDIT SURFACE]
- [STEP 2] If you want to add the point, use [PLACE POINT]
- [STEP 3] If you want to remove the point, select the point and press the [DELETE] key

Topography line setting

- [STEP 1] Select [SITE SETTING] from [MASSING & SITE] tab, under [MODEL SITE].
 - It is a small arrow on the panel Architecture Insert Annotate Analyze Massing & Site Collaborate View Manage Add-Ins Modify 💌 • File mm F 50 B 1 1 5 ~ In-Place Place Curtain Mass Mass System Modify Building Subregion Property Graded Line Region Wall Floor Toposurface Solit Label Show Mass Roof Site Parking by View Settings Component Component Pad Surface Region Contour 0 Model Site Select -Conceptual Mass Model by Face Modify Site

• [STEP 2] Set your topo lines

The increment number depends on your site map scale and how much detail you want to express

	At Inter	vals of: Contours:	10' 0"	Passing Th	rough Elevation: 0' 0*	
Г	Start	Stop	Increment	Range Type	Subcategory	1
1	-1000'	1000' 0	5' 0"	Multiple Values	Secondary Contours	1
2	-1000'	1000' 0	50' 0"	Multiple Values	Primary Contours	
D						١,

[STEP 3] Select [EDIT] for [VISIBILITY/GRAPHICS OVERRIDE]
 Find [TOPOGRAPHY]
 PRIMARY CONTOURS - SOUD / SECONDARY CONTOURS - D

PRIMARY CONTOURS – SOLID / SECONDARY CONTOURS – DASH

		Visibility	/Graphic Overrides for Flo	oor Plan: Site							
Floor Plan: Site	~ 🔠 Edit Type	Model C	ategories Annotation Cate	egories Analytic	al Model Catego	ries Imported Ca	tegories Filters				
Graphics		¢ ⊠sh	w model categories in this y	/iew				If a category	is unchecked, i	t will not be v	/isible
View Scale	1" = 20'-0"										
Scale Value 1:	240	Filter I	st: <multiple></multiple>	~							
Display Model	Normal		100	p	rojection/Surf	ace	(Tut.		Detail	-
Detail Level	Coarse		Visibility	Liner	Datterne	Transmanna	Liner	Datternr	Halftone	Level	
Parts Visibility	Show Original		Characterist Consider	Lines	Patterns	transparency	Lines	Patterns	0	Delland	-
/isibility/Graphics Overr	Edit		Chrystural Path Paint						0	By View	-17
araphic Display Options	Edit	(b)- 6	Structural Patri Kelmi			-				Dy View	-11
nentation	True North		Structural Rebar			-		1		By View	-11
Vall Join Display	Clean all wall joins	- (H) - 6	Chrysteral Colling					1		Dy View	-
liscipline	Architectural		Constructural Stiffeners					1		Dy View	-11
how Hidden Lines	By Discipline		Talaahaaa Daviaa							By View	-11
olor Scheme Location	Background		Telephone Devices					1		Dy View	-11
Color Scheme	<none></none>									By View	
efault Analysis Display	None	_	Childden Lines>			-i					
nderlay			Boundary Point	- ,		-1					
lange: Base Level	None		Interior Point					1			8
lange: Top Level	Unbounded		Primary Contours			- -					8
Inderlay Orientation	Look down		Secondary Cont								
tents			Irlangulation Ed		11.4.4				-	Date	4
Crop View		(H) - N	Vi walis		Hidden				-	By View	
Trop Region Visible			All None	Toward	+ Evr	and All	verride Host Lay	rers			
Annotation Crop			NUTE	Diver	L EX		Out Line Style	s		Edit	
/iew Range	Edit		stagging that we get average	iddan ara drawn							
ssociated Level	Level 1	a	cording to Object Style set	tings.	Object St	yles					
cope Box	None		1								
epth Clipping	No clip										
entity Data	a a la	*									
iew Template	<none></none>								-		-
linu Manie	Sita						OK	Cancel	Apply	H +	telp

Clean up the imported CAD map

- [STEP 1] Select the imported CAD map
- [STEP 2] Click [DELETE LAYERS] from [MODIFY], under [IMPORT INSTANCE]
- [STEP 3] Check all except [BUILDING]

	X	Select Layers/Lev	els to Delete	Has.		X	A A	BIT	6H
IT MAL					Check All Check None Invert		Aug I		
		 minor_roads paths topography View Port water 							
X M									
M/		ОК	Cancel	3					
			VIIIXI,	XX	VAL				Z-

- [STEP 4] Click [OK] to finish the command
- [STEP 5] Check [CROP VIEW] to see only the region inside

Properties		🗙 🔯 Level T 🖉 Site	X 🗄 West		Project Browser - Lames_House_Project.
Ploor Plan Hoor Plan Ste Graphics Vere Scale Scale Yular II Display Model Deal Level Parts Vashity/Graphics Over- Graphic Display Options Onientation Vial Ison Display Discipline Show Hiddm Lines Color Scheme Location Color Scheme Locatio	✓ Ei fait % ✓ 20 d ² ✓ 30 ✓ 30 Normal Coaste Show Coipsal Edz_ Edz_ Tax Norh Chen ai waljains Archaectural By Disciptine Backaground Knore Nore				
Ubditly Orientation Elevers: Crop View Crop Region Visible Annetesion Crop View Temps Scope Box Depth Cipping Hierity Ota View Template View Template View Template Referencing Diad Referencing	Look down	8 1 1 8 1 8		AND	Reder Images : Reter image: 195,03,03, Lannes House- google man-pag

Confirm your topo in 3D

Revit is BIM software. Your 2D drawings can show in 3D. It is wise to double-check in 3D view while you build your model

• [STEP 1] To create a 3D view, click the 3D view on the top of the program

R	080	· < · < ·	8 =	+ "4", LO	A 🙆 ?		° , ₽,	-					Autode	sk Revit 202	I - STUDEN	T VERSION -	Earnes_Ho	use_Project_V	ong
File	Architecture	Insert An	notate .	Analyze	Massing & Site	Collab	orate 🕻	View N	Aanage	Add-In:	Mod	ify 🖸	•						
B				L.			0	0			0	o	5	1		Pg.	0		0
Modify	View Templates	Visibility/ Filt Graphics	ers Thin Lines	Show Hidden Li	Remove nes Hidden Lines	Cut Profile	Render	Render in Cloud	Render Gallery	3D View	Section	Callout	Plan Views	Elevation	Drafting View	Duplicate View	Legends	Schedules	Sc E
Select -			Graph	ics		×	F	resentatio	n					(Create				

• [STEP 2] Once you click the 3D view, the 3D view will automatically open. To refer back to this view, you can open the 3D view on Project Browser by double-clicking. If you want to keep the view, you must rename the 3D view. For example, ISO-view-01



• [STEP 3] Click [SHADED] to see the color



• [STEP 4] Check [Section box] on the Properties and adjust the Section box by adjusting the blue arrow



- [STEP 5] Click [Sun path On]
- [STEP 6] Click Shadow
- [STEP 7] Now you can simulate the sun path by drag and dropping the sun



Create Building Pod & Property line

For the building pod and property line, you should hide the Topo image by clicking the image, and mouse right-click and select [Hide in view] > [Elements]

- [STEP 01] Go to Site & massing tab Click [Building Pad]
- [STEP 02] Make sure your building pod is on level 1
- [STEP 03] Draw a closed line
- [STEP 04] Go to Site & massing tab Click [Property Line] Create by sketching

• [STEP 05] Use Google Map to draw the property line. Draw a closed line



Create Roads

- Go to Site & massing tab Click Subregion
- Draw a closed line



Create Neighborhoods (Trees)

• Go to Site & massing tab – Click Site component



Once you finished your site plan, you should hide the Google image.

SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

Archibald & Fraser Architects Ltd. (2012, November 10). Lochaber Centre Site Plan.jpg. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lochaber_Centre_Site_Plan.jpg

<u>Site Planning Process</u> Chesterfield County, Virginia Planning Department. Accessed 11 Feb 2009. <u>Archived</u> March 29, 2009, at the <u>Wayback Machine</u>

Google. (n.d.). Google map. Retrieved October 23, 2020, from https://www.google.com/maps

Worldwide map files for any design program. (n.d.). Retrieved October 23, 2020, from https://cadmapper.com/

Chapter 10. Set grids, levels, dimensions, & building columns



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Import CAD drawings- Floor plans, building elevations, and sections

(CO 2) Adjust and verify the scale

(CO 3) Create and modify grids and levels

(CO 4) Create plan views- Floors and ceilings

(CO 5) Create columns



At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.


Decture Contents

(CO I) Import Drawings- Floor plans, building elevations, and sections

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=92

Prepare Drawings before import CAD drawings

- [STEP 1] Open Revit application > Open your project > Double-click [LEVEL 1] from [PROECT BROWSER] > Close all other views except [LEVEL 1]
- [STEP 2] Select [SITE] information including the property line, trees, and neighborhood buildings > Mouse right-click on one of the selected elements > select [HIDE IN VIEW] > Select [ELEMENTS] or [CATEGORY]



Repeat this process for FLOOR PLAN - LEVEL 2, ELEVATION - EAST, WEST, NORTH, SOUTH, CEILING PLAN -

LEVEL 1, LEVEL 2



Insert drawings

In this tutorial, we will practice how to add an image (drawing) to the view. You can insert CAD files and PDF files

 [STEP 1] Select [IMPORT IMAGE] from [INSERT] tab, under [IMPORT] panel Note. Revit can import various file types – dwg, dxf, pdf, jpg, tif, rvt, and more Note. For this project, I will use [tif] files

File	Archited	ture	Insert	Annotate	Analyze	e Mas	sing & S	ite Collabo	rate	View	Manage	Add	-Ins	Modify				
Q	RVT	8	CAD	5		Ð			PDF			CAD	PDF			믜	[7]	
Modify	Link Revit	Link IFC	Link CAD	Link Topography	DWF Markup	Decal •	Point Cloud	Coordination Model	Link PDF	Link Image	Manage Links	Import CAD	Import PDF	mport mage	Load Family	Get Autodesk Content	Load as Group	Insert from File
Select -					Im	nort CA	D					-	nport	ĸ		Load from	n Library	

• [STEP 2] Find the folder where the drawings are saved > select the floor plan > click [OPEN] > place the imported image on the view [LEVEL 1]

Repeat this process for FLOOR PLAN – LEVEL 2, ELEVATION – EAST, WEST, NORTH, SOUTHNote. The imported image will only show on the view where you placed.

Note. To use the image file that you imported for your other level like [LEVEL 2]. Click [MANAGE LINKS] > Click

rchitecture (Annotate Analyze	e Massing & Sale Cofeboorte Vie	Manage Add-los Modify	Control Autom Forming Continue Load f	inter a construction of the construction of th	an fin					ې Project Bro آر هم چارې نو	wser - Earnes, House, P ws (all)
Floor Plan						_				_	Q _m ÷ Flo	Level 1
Level 2	- 🗄 Edit Type		Manage Links				Channel			×	- Ce	Site iling Plans
	1/8" = 1"-0"		Revit SFC CAD Formats	DWF Markups Point	Clouds Topog	raphy PDF	Image					Level 1
r 1:	96	-		1		Peteren	1		100000			Level 2
odel	Normal		Link Name		Status	Type	Size	Saved Path	Path Type	Count	<u>⊜</u> _30	Views
8	Coarse				-		-	C\Users\vongveon\OneDriv		-		ISO-view-01
iity	Show Original		10010	and the second second				e - Iowa State			e tie	vations (Building Eleva
iraphics Overr	Edit		09_02_03_Eames	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Import	1495 >	University\105-ISU\02-Resea	Absolute	1		East
splay Options	Edit		House-google map.jpg	1. 2			885	rch/2020				reorth
5	Project North							Revit 02\Screenshots\09 02				Mart
hisplay	Clean all wall joins							C:\Users\yongyeon\OneDriv			100 Lan	west
	Architectural	-		1000000000			1107	e - Iowa State				edular/Ouantitian (all)
Jen Lines	By Discipline		bloure-ratellite maning	96.03		Import	885	University/105-ISU/02-Resea	Absolute	1	Et su	wts (all)
sme Location	Background		Louis Menterine mapility				100	ISU-mini-grant\002 Revit\09			U SPI Far	tilles
me	<none></none>	-		has been as				Revit_02\Screenshots\09_02		1.4	a lot Ger	uns
arysis Display -	None		_					C:\Users\yongyeon\OneDriv			🚥 Rev	it Links
-	L A		Fames House Floor Plan H				14400	e - Iowa State				
a lead	hlone		ouse.tif	T		Import	x 9600	rch\2020	Absolute	1		
a Level	Unbounded			1.				ISU-mini-grant\002_Revit\00				
intation	Look down	-						Revit\Eames_House_Floor_				
	*	E		1								
on Visible	ō											
n Crop	0											
e	Edit											
Level	Level 2											
	None											
ping	No clip				and the second second		10	and a second				
	\$	2	Add Place Instanc	2 Show	1.875	el Kec	Ned Hron	Not Reload	10 10	emove		
slate	<none></none>											
e	Level 2											
cy	independent.	_					0	X Cancel	odv I	Help		
eet	244						-					
g Sheet	1	-										
g Detail												
	2											

[IMAGES] tab > Click the image that you loaded in the model > Click [PLACE INSTANCE]

(CO 2) Adjust and verify the scale

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=92

Confirm the scale and position of the imported drawings

If the imported image/CAD file/PDF is in the right scale and position, skip this one, but double-check for your accuracy

• [STEP 1] Select imported image > click [SCALE] from [MODIFY] tab, under [MODIFY] panel



• [STEP 2] Click the first point that you know the dimension. I will use the overall building dimension (58'-7"). You may also use a graphic scale if you have one

You need to zoom in to select the first point in the middle of the dimension line.



- [STEP 3] Click the second point
- [STEP 4] Type the dimension [58'7"] and press [Enter] key
- [STEP 5] Zoom out to see the position



• [STEP 6] Move the drawing to match the base drawing. You can use a specific point to match the drawing to the base Revit model that you created



You may need to change the graphic display to [WIREFRAME] to see the image behind the model

Repeat this process for FLOOR PLAN - LEVEL 2, ELEVATION - EAST, WEST, NORTH, SOUTH



(CO 3) Create and modify grids and levels

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=92

Create grids

- [STEP 1] Open [LEVEL 1] view
- [STEP 2] Select [GRID] from [ARCHITECTURE] tab, under [DATUM] panel
- [STEP 3] Using the straight-line selection, hover over the view near the west wall until it becomes highlighted in the center of the wall and an "X" appears



- [STEP 4] Click the first point and click the second point to complete the gridline 1
- [STEP 5] To complete the remaining gridlines, you can copy or continue drawing gridlines based on the imported image
- [STEP 6] To copy, select the Revit gridline 1 that you just made. Select the Copy tool and click a point and specify the second point to the next grid line
- [STEP 7] Also you should use dimension [DI] to specify the distance between gridlines



- [STEP 8] Continue to copy all North/South gridlines
- [STEP 9] If the grid bubble and numbers are too big, you can update the view scale by clicking scale. For the Eames House project, use 3/8" = 1'-0"



[STEP 10] Create a Horizontal new grid for East/West. And Update the Grid name to [A] and complete East/West grids



• [STEP 11] Your gridlines and dimensions can be locked



• [STEP 12] Open [NORTH] view and adjust the grid line heights by dragging and drop the edge of the grid line. And repeat this for [WEST] view

•



Create and Modify levels

- [STEP 1] We will now make Levels. Begin by navigating to the [SOUTH] elevation in the Project Browser.
 - Adjust the length of the level by dragging and drop the edge of the level line
 - Repeat this for [EAST] elevation view
- [STEP 2] After you have confirmed that Levels 1 & 2 are set to the correct elevation, you can add additional levels. To adjust the elevation number, click on the number and type in the correct elevation.
 Note: Level 2 will be [9'-7"] higher than Level 1.



- [STEP 3] Add a roof level.
 - Select [LEVEL] from [ARCHITECTURE] tab, under [DATUM] panel Or, type [LL]
 - Click the left corner of the level and click the second point to finish the command
 - Rename [Roof] > Click OK in the window pop-up and change the view name accordingly
 - Adjust the height to [18' 5 1/2"]
- [STEP 4] If you copy (CO)the level from the existing level, the view will not be created. Create Ground and Level 1 top (Black symbol)



- [STEP 5] Update the view scales
 - 3/16'' = 1'-0'' for all elevations
 - 3/8'' = 1'-0'' for floor plans and ceiling plans



(CO 4) Create plan views- Floors and ceilings

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=92

Currently, you have what you need. When you add a new level [LL], the views automatically created. If you made the view by coping existing levels [CO], you have to create new views for the level

- [STEP 1] Select [PLAN VIEWS]
- [STEP 2] Select [FLOOR PLAN] if you need a floor plan
- [STEP 3] Select [NAME OF THE LEVEL] and click [OK], then you can find the view from [PROJECT BROWSER]

If you need additional plans for furniture plans, power, and data plans, and finish plans, you need to duplicate the view by mouse-right clicking and select duplicate view > duplicate

Note, there are three options for duplicating views. Please refer to this link for further explanation

(CO 5) Create columns

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=92

We will now add columns beginning on the Ground level

• [STEP 1] Under the Architecture tab on the Ribbon select Structural Column.

File	Architect	ure) In:	sert A	Annotate An	alyze Mas	sing & Si	ite Colla	borate	View	Mana	ige Ad	d-Ins N	lodify											
6	0	0		Ø		P	P						0	0	A!	5	[6]				X	X	X	
Modify	Wall	Door V	Vindow	Component	Column	Roof	Ceiling	Floor	System	Grid	Mullion	Railing	Ramp	Stair	Model M Text	lodel Line	Model Group	Room	Room Separator	Tag Room	Area	Area Boundary	Tag Area	By S Face
Select -			0	Structural	Column	ld						Cir	culation			Model				Room &	Area 🔻			
e		1011	_			al 1	V	A Imu	12		- South		AL	Mart		DA I	muni 7		TE Lava	i i	1	North		Acre

• [STEP 2] Select the 5" x 5" column.

Note: an existing column family may need to be edited to create this size by clicking [EDIT TYPE] > Click [DUPLICATE] > add name [W5x 5] > click [OK] > update width and height to 5"

W Shapes-Column V Window Window Destricts Parameter There Window See Offset Parameter Description Parameter <td< th=""><th>Properties</th><th></th><th>Type Properties</th><th></th><th>×</th></td<>	Properties		Type Properties		×
W5.5 Partin: W stock Dotain: Type: Wsic Dotain: Type: Wsic Dotain: Column Location Mark sase Cored Roof Dotain: Type: Wsic Data: Type: Wsic Dotain: Renameter: Type: Dotain: Renameter: Type: Wsic Type: Wsic Dotain: Renameter: Type: Dotain: Moment of Inetia strong axis 54.60 in* Elastic Modulus strong axis 18.70 in* Partin: Modulus strong axis 18.70 in* Partin: Modulus strong axis 18.30 in* Torisonal Modulus 19.00 in* Strocktrast 2070.000 in* Strocktrast 2070.000 in* Strocktrast 2000 in* Web Thickness 0.340' Nark 0.00* Mark 0.00* Mark 0.00* Web Thickness 0.340' <th>W Shapes-C</th> <th>olumn</th> <th>Euclin W Change Column</th> <th></th> <th></th>	W Shapes-C	olumn	Euclin W Change Column		
ructural Columns (22)	W5x5		 Pamily: W Snapes-Column 	V Load.	•
ructural Columns (22) C Edit Types parataints size Level Ground size Level Ground op Level Roof op Level Roof op Christ Column Syle Aver Wah Gint Steel ASTM A992 Troisional Modulus strong axis Elastic Mod	1		Type: W5x5	Y Duplicat	e
Instituints dumm Location Mark dumm Location Mark sac Offset op Level Roof op Offset Offset op Offset Offset op Offset <	Structural Columns (22)	🗸 🔚 Edit Ty	pe		
Column Location Mark Type Parameter Value e Ses C Offset Op Level Roof Parameter Value e Op Level Roof Op Column State in double strong axis	Constraints		8 -	Rename	L
isse Level Ground isse Offset Roof op Offset 0 0 Goldma Syle Vertical Aroves Wah Grids 2 Aroves Wah Grids 2 Bastic Modulus strong axis 54.66 in ⁴ Elstic Modulus strong axis 54.66 in ⁴ Elstic Modulus strong axis 64.40 in ⁴ Data Modulus wak axis 7 Platic Modulus strong axis 7 Platic	Column Location Mark		- Type Parameters		(
Brancter Value iop Level Roof iop Level Roof iop Content of Inetia veck axis 93.40 in* Iolum Syle Vertical Nowes With Grid Intel veck axis Iolum Syle Parameter Value Intel veck axis Iolum Syle Vertical Nowes With Grid Intel veck axis Parameter Intel veck axis Parameter Vector Iolum Syle Vertical Nowes With Grid Intel veck axis Parameter Intel veck axis Parameter Vector Intel veck axis 93.40 in* Elestic Modulus veck axis 18.70 in* Parameter Intel veck axis	Base Level	Ground			
ig Level Roof Go Construction	Base Offset	10-0-	Parameter	Value	= ^
ago Offet o o centre centre o centre o centre o centre o centre c	Top Level	Roof	Moment of Inertia weak axis	93.40 in*	
Scieum Style Verical Avers Vith Grids Avers With Avers Ave	Top Offset	0.0	Elastic Modulus strong axis	54.60 in°	
Aoves With Grids □ Aoves With Grids □ aterials and Finithes * Tructural Marchan * aterials and Finithes * Tructural Marchan * op Connection None ase Connection None ase Connection None ase Connection None ase Connection None Shear Area strong axis 0.00° Comments 0.00° Area 0.00° Hase Crented None </td <td>Column Style</td> <td>Vertical</td> <td>Elastic Modulus weak axis</td> <td>18.70 in*</td> <td></td>	Column Style	Vertical	Elastic Modulus weak axis	18.70 in*	
aterials and Finishes \$28.30 in ⁴ Tructural Material Steel ASTM A992 Tructural Material Steel ASTM A992 Torsional Moment of Inertia 1.39 in ⁴ Torsional Moment of Inertia 1.30 in ⁴ Torsional Moment of Inertia 1	Moves With Grids		Plastic Modulus strong axis	60.40 in ²	
tructural Material Steel ASTM A992 ructural Moment of Ineria 1.39 in* Torsional Modulus Varping Constant 2070.000 in* Shear Area seak axis Principal Axes Angle 0.00* Structural Section Geometry Wath South Sout	Materials and Finishes		Plastic Modulus weak axis	28.30 in ²	
nutural none insise Connection Course insise Construction insise Course insise Construction insise Construction insise Construction insise Construction insise Course insise Construction insise Construction insise Construction insise Course insise Construction insise Course insise Construction insise Course	Structural Material	Steel ASTM A992	Torsional Moment of Inertia	1.39 in*	
op Connection None ase Connection None mable Analytical Model Image olume 0.89 CF width 5.000° mage Image comments 0.390 CF flange Disconstruction these Created New Construction hase Demolished None Volume 0.500° Centroid Horizontal 2.500° Centroid Vertical 2.500° Veb Thickness 0.540° Web Thickness 0.540° Wascender 0.500° Centroid Horizontal 2.500° Centroid Vertical 2.500° Wascender Type Inage Keynote Model Model Manufacture Type Comments Type Comments UR What do these properties do?	Structural		* Torsional Modulus		
ase Connection None nable Analytical Model mensions folume 0.89 CF clume 0.89 CF mage comments Aark nasing hase Created New Construction thase Demolished None Height 5.000" Flange Thickness 0.340" Web Filet 0.500" Centroid Horizontal 2.500" Identity Data Aark maing Centroid Horizontal 2.500" Respondentity Web Filet 0.500" Centroid Horizontal 2.500" Respondentity Wat do these properties do? Vest Cancel Apple	Top Connection	None	Warping Constant	2070.000 in*	
nable Analytical Model mensions folume 0.89 CF Principal Axes Angle 0.00° Structural Section Geometry Width 4 Height 5.000° Aark nasing Aark nasing hase Created None Henge Thickness 0.30° Web Thickness 0.30° Hase Created None Henge Thickness 0.30° Web Tolkness 0.30° Web Tolkness 0.30° Web Tolkness 0.30° Web Tolkness 0.30° Web Tolkness 0.30° Web Tolkness 0.30° Web Tolkness 0.30° Web Tolkness 0.30° Web Tolkness 0.30° Web Tolkness 0.30° Web Tolkness 0.30° Centroid Vertical 2.500° Vertical Manufacturer Type Comments URL What do these properties do? CK Cancel	Base Connection	None	Shear Area strong axis		
mensions 0.59 CF folume 0.59 CF entity Data * mage * comments 0.50° Aark * hasing * hase Created New Construction thase Demolished None identity Data * Model 810 Type Image 810 Type Image 810 Type Image 810 Type Image 800° Keynote 810 Model 810 Type Image 800° Keynote 100 Model 100 Muta do these properties do?	Enable Analytical Model		Shear Area weak axis		
colume 0.89 CF R mage mage 5.000" comments 5.000" 1 Aark 5.000" 1 hase Greated New Construction 0.560" 1 hase Created New Construction 2.500" 1 Centroid Horizontal 2.500" 1 1 Centroid Horizontal 2.500" 1 1 Identity Data 8 3 3 1 Make Demolished None 1 1 1 1 Web Fillet 0.500" 1	Dimensions		Principal Axes Angle	0.00"	
entity Data nage Nicht Stoor S	Volume	0.89 CF	Structural Section Geometry		*
mage comments Jark Jark lassing ness Created New Construction thase Demolished None Identity Data Assembly Code Type Image Keynote Model Manufacturer Type Comments URL What do these properties do? OK Cancel Apply	dentity Data		Width	5.000"	
Comments 0.560° Mark 0.340° vasing * Mase Created New Construction Thase Demolished None Identity Data 2.500° Assembly Code B10 Type Image Keynote Model Manufacturer Type Comments URL VWhat do these properties do? CK Cancel Apply	Image		Height	5.000"	
Mark 0.340" masing 0.500" hase Created New Construction thase Demolished None Identity Data 0.300" Assembly Code B10 Type Image Keynote Model Model Manufacturer Type Comments URL VHat do these properties do? <	Comments	***	Flange Thickness	0.560"	
Assing © 0.500° hase Created New Construction hase Demolished None Web Fillet 0.500° Centroid Horizontal 2.500° Centroid Vertical 2.500° Identity Data Assembly Code Type Image Keynote Model Manufacturer Type Comments URL What do these properties do? << Preview OK Cancel Apply	Mark		Web Thickness	0.340"	
hase Created New Construction thase Demolished None Centroid Vertical 2.500 Centroid Vertical 2.500 Identify Data Assembly Code B10 Type Image Keynote Model Manufacturer Type Comments URL What do these properties do? << Preview Cot Cancel Apply a	Phasing		8 Web Fillet	0.500"	
hase Demolished None Identity Data R Assembly Code B10 Type Image R Keynote Model Manufacturer Type Comments URL Vihat do these properties do? <	Phase Created	New Construction	Centroid Horizontal	2.500"	
Identify Data 8 Assembly Code B10 Type Image 1 Keynote Model Model 1 Manufacturer 1 Type Comments 1 URL 1 What do these properties do? 0K	Phase Demolished	None	Centroid Vertical	2.500"	
Assembly Code B10 Type Image Keynote Model Monufacturer Type Comments URL What do these properties do? << Preview OK Cancel Apply a		utkanismin muismuismuismuismuism	Identity Data		2
Type Image Keynote Model Manufacturer Type Comments URL What do these properties do? << Preview OK Cancel Apply a			Assembly Code	B10	
Keynote Model Manufacturer Type Comments URL Vihat do these properties do? << Preview CK Cancel Apply a			Type Image		111- APR
Model Manufacturer Type Comments URL What do these properties do? << Preview CK Cancel Apply			Keynote		100 mg
Manufacturer Type Comments URL What do these properties do? << Preview OK Cancel Applying a			Model		
Type Comments Image: Comments URL Image: Comments What do these properties do? << Preview			Manufacturer		
URL What do these properties do? << Preview OK Cancel Apply			Tupe Comments		
What do these properties do? << Preview OK Cancel Apply			lipi		
What do these properties do? << Preview			TONE		
<< Preview OK Cancel Auphy A			What do these properties do?		
<< Preview OK Cancel Apply 5					
			<< Preview	OK Cancel Aps	sty A
			1		

- [STEP 3] Confirm the Base Level is set to Ground and the Top Level is set to Roof
- [STEP 4] Place a column on your [LEVEL 1]
- [STEP 5] It will be necessary to Move [MV] and Copy [CO] the Revit columns to align as shown on the imported floor plan and the grid that you created

Hide the imported drawing image to confirm all columns are properly placed

Type [TL] to see the thick lines for print



SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

Autodesk.Help. (2007, September 13). About Duplicating Views in Revit. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/revit-products/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2018/ENU/3PP-RVT-ARCH-ASCENT/files/GUID-F4ABE31C-D4D8-45FB-A628-A512D41D8114-htm.html

Chapter 11. Add/edit beams, walls, & curtain walls



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Add/Edit Beam

(CO 2) Create walls

(CO 3) Edit walls wall properties - Wall thickness, Wall details, & Finishes

(CO 4) Edit/add wall properties - Wall opening, wall sweep

(CO 5) Add/Edit Curtainwalls, Mullions, & Panels



At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Decture Contents

(CO I) Add/Edit Beam

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=94

Adding beams are not typical for interior design projects, but it is needed for the Eames House project. You may use this information for an open ceiling plan of commercial projects as well.

You can find [BEAM] from the [STRUCTURE] tab, under the [STRUCTURE] panel.

	File	Architect	ure	Structure	Preca	ist In	sert	Annotate	Analyze	Massing & S	ite	Collaborate	e Vie	ew I	Manage	Add	l-Ins	Modify	y
	6	B		0	m	M				Ŀ	P	0		##	EII				-
1	Modify	Beam	Wall	Column	Floor	Truss	Brace	Beam System	Connection	Isolated	Wall	Slab	Rebar	Area	Path	Fabric Area	Fabric Sheet	Cover	С
S	elect 🔻			Stru	ucture			ы	Connection -	⊌ Fo	undat	ion			Rein	forcem	ent 🔻		

If you are missing the Structure tab, click [HOME] menu > Click [OPTION] > Click [USER INTERFACE] > Check [STRUCTURE TABL AND TOOLS]

Options		^
General	Configure	
User Interface	Tools and analyses:	
Graphics Hardware File Locations	Architecture tab and tools Stucture tab and tools Steel tab and tools Structural analysis and tools Systems tab: mechanical tools Mechanical analysis tools	
Rendering Check Spelling	Systems tab: electrical tools Electrical analysis tools Systems tab: piping tools Prince analysis tools	

To see the structural element in solid shapes instead of lines, the view detail level must be [FINE]. Please update all floor plans, ceiling plans, and elevations to [FINE] on a detail level.

	Coarse
	🖂 Medium
	🗱 Fine
3/8" = 1'-0"	C C S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S

Add Beams

• [STEP 1] Click [Beam] on [Structure]

- [STEP 2] Select W Shapes-W5X5
 - If you don't have a W5x5 type. Please add one by clicking Edit Type > Duplicate > Name the type > Edit Width and Height to 5
- [STEP 3] Select [Level: Level 2] from Option Bar [Modify/Place Beam] for the West Wall of the building
- [STEP 4] Click the center of the north column of the west wall, and click the center of the south column of the west wall. You will get a warning message, but it is OK, just click X



• [STEP 5] Confirm the place from the 3D view by clicking the HOUSE icon from quick access and hide site information by category. Update the 3D view scale to 3/8"=1'-0."



• [STEP 6] Open the 3D view, West elevation, and the floor plan together by typing [WT]



- [STEP 7] The Beam must be rotated to 90 degrees.
 - Click the Beam, and change the properties
 - Change Cross-Section Rotation to 90 degree
 - The beam location needs to be aligned from the Top view of the 3D view. Use Move (MV) command to move the Beam to be aligned.



- [STEP 8] See the West elevation and move the Beam to align with the imported image, [MOVE] command will not work.
 - Thus, update [Y OFFSET VALUE] to [1' 1 ¹/₂"]



• [STEP 9] For other beams repeat step 1 through step 8. You may select all beams that you created and change the properties – Step 6 & 7. or Copy elements that have the same properties.



• Complete beams for the second floor and the roof exterior beams, AND the second level interior beams

Add NEW Beams from a new family

- [STEP 1] Click [Load Family] on [Insert] tab
- [STEP 2] Download [LH-Series Bar Joist.rfa] from Canvas Eames House module
- [STEP 3] Find the folder and select the file and Open
- [STEP 4] On Roof plan, Click [BEAM] on the [STRUCTURE] tab
- [STEP 5] Click North column and South column to create the Bar Joist



• [STEP 6] Edit the family type to match the imported drawing



• [STEP 7] Copy (CO) the first Bar Joist for the other Bar joists



(CO 2) Create walls

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=94

Draw WALLs with Various types based on the imported base drawing image

- [STEP 1] Select [WALL] from [ARCHITECTURE] tab, under [BUILD] panel or Type [WA]
- [STEP 2] Select a Wall family
 - If you don't have a wall type from the Properties, add by clicking Edit Type and Duplicate from a wall type.
 - For Eames House, we will use
 - Curtain Wall 1
 - Retaining -12" Concrete
 - Interior-4 7/8" Partition
 - Interior-6 1/8" Partition
 - Soffit-1/2" GWB & Metal Stud
 - But the wall details will be modified, and custom walls will be added later in this tutorial.
- [STEP 3] Confirm [BASE CONSTRAINT] and [TOP CONSTANINT]. If needed set base offset and top offset
- [STEP 4] Specify Location Line
- [STEP 5] If the wall is other than a straight line, specify a line/shape type (circle, arc, rectangle, inscribed polygon, or ellipse. And draw lines to cross-reference of the imported base drawing image
- [STEP 6] Make Dimensions [DI] for verification purposes.
- [STEP 7] Confirm with 3D view



(CO 3) Edit walls wall properties – Wall thickness, Wall details, & Finishes

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=94

For your wall thickness, refer to Kilmer, W., & Kilmer, Rosemary. (2016). Construction drawings and details / W. Otie Kilmer and Rosemary Kilmer. (Third ed.).

For your design project, you will need to decide on your construction details.

Typical residential house wall thickness (For your reference)

- Interior Wall (without Plumbing) = $4\frac{1}{2}$ " ((1) 2"X4" wood stud, which are $3\frac{1}{2}$ " deep + (2) $\frac{1}{2}$ " Gypsum boards)
- Interior Wall (with Plumbing) = $6\frac{1}{2}$ " ((1) 2"X6" wood stud, which are $5\frac{1}{2}$ " deep + (2) $\frac{1}{2}$ " Gypsum boards)
- Exterior Wall (with Brick) = $10^{"}$ ((1) 2"X6" wood stud, which are $5\frac{1}{2}$ " deep + (1) $\frac{1}{2}$ " Gypsum boards + (1) $\frac{1}{2}$ " Insulation + (1) $3\frac{1}{2}$ " Brick)
- Exterior Wall (with Stucco, wood, aluminum, or vinyl) = 7 1/2" ((1) 2"X6" wood stud, which are 5 ½" deep + (1) ½" Gypsum boards + (1) ½" Insulation + (1) 1" Stucco, wood, aluminum, or vinyl)

For the Eames house project, although this building is residential, the construction is a combination of wood base and metal base. Revit provides walls for commercial construction, which is a metal base, so, you may use the provided walls and change some walls.

- Interior Wall = Wood stud with Gypsum BD + Paint Finish or Wood BD (3 1/8", 4 7/8", 6", 8")
- Exterior Wall = Curtain Wall with Glass, Wood, Metal panels
- Exterior Wall = Metal with Gypsum BD + Paint Finish or Wood BD
- Exterior Retain Wall = Concert

Once you click a wall, you can edit the properties (wall height-where it starts and ends & wall phase) for each wall

If you want to change the wall's type (wall thickness Graphic style, materials, Structure, BIM information), you can change by clicking [Edit Type]

For the future strategy, it is wise to [Duplicate] the type and edit type properties. For best practice, add "000" for the new

duplication. This will allow the types to organize in alphabetical order.

Madity (Well)													
Properties		P Lo	vel 1 X							¥	🕲 (BD)		
Basic Wall Interior - 4.7	/8* Partition (1-hr)	9	Type Properties Eamly: System Family	r: Basic Wall			Ŷ	Loed		· @			
Walls (1)	Self Edit Type	-	Turnet	0" Dection (1 br)				Duplicate	- the	- C			
Constraints		/	Taker and a short of the	o Pareson (1411)				Foburatette		*			
Location Line	Wall Centerline							Rename					
Base Constraint	Level 1	li I	Tora Davandara						1				
Base Offset	0, 0,		Type Parameters										
Base is Attached	C2	-1	Para	imeter		Value		= ^			1		
Base Extension Distance	0, 0,	li I	Construction								-	-	
Top Constraint	Up to level: Level 1 Ceiling		Structure		1	Edit			1.		~	10 a a a	
Unconnected Height	8' 0"		wrapping at inserts		Do not wrap						SAN.		
Top Offset	0, 0,	+	Wrapping at Ends		None				-++©				
Top is Attached	0		Width		0" 47/8"							S.A.	
Top Extension Distance	0' 0'		Function	Name		×			1		1	ANT S	
Room Bounding			Graphics					*			il	Contraction of the second	and the second second
Related to Mass		-3	Coarse Scale Fill Pattern	Name: 000 Inte	nor-4 1/5"Partition				-+-(0)		ALL DESCRIPTION OF THE PARTY OF	1	A
Cross-Section	Vertical	1.1	Coarse Scale Fill Color	Tanier .									
Structural	*		Materials and Einishes	_				*			X	1 De	
Structural			Structural Material		OK C	lance				¥			10 10
Enable Analytical Model	- Charles - Char	3/8" +	perocediar material		011 0	and the				>			A A
Structural Usage	Non-bearing	PH	Analytical Properties		0.0470.071144.02	100		×		Ŧ	15	1 18	A A
Dimensions	*		Heat Transfer Coefficient	(U)	0.04/2 BTU/(n-ft)	· · F)				0 .	1		No Alton
Length	8' 2"	8	Thermal Resistance (K)		21.1904 (h-ft - F)	610				100		JK A	A CONTRACT
Area	64.00 SF	8	Thermal Mass		1.4400 BTU/ F					Sap			
Volume	26.00 CF	_	Absorptance		0.700000						-		
Identity Data	*		Koughness		3				0			1	NAX
Image		8	Identity Data					*		-		V	KAN
Comments			Type Image							0			
Mark	1	5	Keynote										

Click [EDIT] on [STRUCTURE] and change thickness and material and click [OK]

Madify Wars													
Properties		10 100	11	×					-		≠ @ 112		
Basic Wall Interior - 4 7 Walls (1)	/8" Partition (1-hir)		Edit A Fam Typ Totz Res The	Assembly e: 000_inter e: 010_inter e: 014 5/8" istance (R): 20.4415 (rmal Mass: 1.2969 BT	ior-4 ½" Partition h-ft≩-ff)/BTU U/ff		Sample Heig	ght: 20' 0"	×	» · الله · •			
Base Constraint	I evel 1		La	avers									
Base Offset	0' 0"			194	EXTER	RIOR SIDE					~		
Base is Attached		+	1 CT	Function	Material	Thickness	Wraps	Material	۱ H	0	43 P 12		
Base Extension Distance	0' 0"	1i		Finish 2 (5)	Gynsum Wall Board	0' 0 1/2"	R	material			· · · · ·		
Top Constraint	Up to level: Level 1 Ceiling		2	Core Boundary	Lavers Above Wrap	0. 0.	C)		1.				
Unconnected Height	8' 0"		3	Structure [1]	Metal Stud Laver	0' 3 1/2"	-				225	and a second	
Top Offset	0' 0"	1	4	Core Boundary	Layers Below Wrap	0. 0.	-		L ++	0	1 N.S.	Nº COM	
Top is Attached	1.00	16	5	Finish 2 [5]	Gypsum Wall Board	0' 0 1/2		-		-		·	
Top Extension Distance	0. 0.	1	ΠF				J				1		
Room Bounding		1	4		-		-	_			in the second se		
Related to Mass.		-*							++	0	and the second s		200
Cross-Section	Vertical	11									6		No. 2 March
structural	\$	1											-
Structural		1									~	1 18 1	7 Carlos
Enable Analytical Model		3/8* =								>		NA A	A
Structural Usage	Non-bearing												X
Dimensions	\$	1								0.0	1		

To change other walls from the Revit Metal base 47/8" wall to Wood base 41/2."

- [STEP 1] Click one of Metal base 4 7/8" wall
- [STEP 2] Mouse right click and click [Select all instances] and click [in Entire Project]
- [STEP 3] Select [000_Interior-4 ¹/₂" Partition]



(CO 4) Edit/add wall properties – Wall opening, wall sweep

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=94

Wall opening or wall elevation modification

- [STEP 1] On a plan view, click the wall that you want to make wall opening
- [STEP 2] Click [Edit Profile]



- [STEP 3] Go To View window will open.
- [STEP 4] Select an appropriate view to open. I prefer the ISO view to quickly change the elements



- [STEP 5] Draw the opening with dimension
- [STEP 6] Click the green checkmark to finish



• [STEP 7] Double check in 3D view

Wall Sweep is a very useful tool to create moldings

- [STEP 1] To create a continuous molding. First, you need to load a profile by clicking [Load Family] from the [Insert] tab.
- [STEP 2] Find Profile from Revit library and open it to the file.

Looking	Wall	v 📥 🚬 🗙 🗮 Views 👻
LOOK II.	Desktop	Preview
	This PC	
Interiord	S (C:)	
1 SUGY	Autodesk	
	RVT 2020	
Documents	Libraries	
	Profiles	
	Wal	
My Computer	Libraries	
A 1	Network	
-	OneDrive - Iowa State University	

- [STEP 3] Click the small arrow under Wall on Architecture tab
- [STEP 4] Select Wall: Sweep on 3D view. Recommend a camera view or a 3D view with a section box
- [STEP 5] Click [Edit Type] > Duplicate the type. Don't forget to add "000" for your type.
- [STEP 6] Click profile under construction, select the profile you just loaded.



- [STEP 7] See the preview and click the appropriate location on the wall for the molding on the 3D view.
- [STEP 8] To finish the Sweep, [ESC] on Keyboard.

(CO 5) Add/Edit Curtainwalls, Mullions, & Panels

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=94

Modify curtain wall

- [STEP 1] To add curtain wall grids, open a view. It can be an elevation view. You may close the floor plans.
- [STEP 2] For the Eames house project, confirm the imported base drawing elevations are in the correct locations.

- [STEP 3] Click [Curtain Grid] on [Architecture] tab
- [STEP 4] Select [All Segments] or [One segment]
- [STEP 5] Click grid lines and use dimensions for accurate distance based on the imported elevations



• [STEP 6] You can edit the grid, click the grid, and click add/remove segments.



• Complete for all four exterior walls

Add curtain wall mullion

- [STEP 1] On the elevation, click [MULLION] on the [ARCHITECTURE] tab
- [STEP 2] You may choose All Grid Lines, Grid Line, or Grid Line Segment
- [STEP 3] Also, you may choose a specific type of Mullion by clicking Properties, and you can edit the type as well
 - You can change material, size, profile, the width of sides, angle, & offset
- [STEP 4] Click lines to apply the mullion type that you selected



Modify Mullion

- [STEP 1] If you need to change the mullion type, you can click the mullion that you made and change the properties
- [STEP 2] If you need to change the mullion type and join order, click the Mullion you want to change and click [+] on the view to change the order



To change the panel from Glazing to Solid, door, or window

- [STEP 1] Select the panel to change by multiple [Tab] keys
- [STEP 2] Change Properties to what you need
- [STEP 3] If you need to change the properties, click [Edit type] and click [Duplicate] and change the value
- [STEP 4] If you need to add a new type, Load family first and change the Properties

File Architecture Structure	Steel Insert Annotate	Analyze Massing & Site	Collaborate View	Manage Add-In	s Enscape™	Modify Curtain Panels	•
Salast an Descention Clinicated	Join + 🕍 🔦 🥞	* O U II =	내 盐 × 🗞	* .	In-Place		
Modify Curtain Panels	Geometry	Modity	VIEW	ivieasure Create	Model		
Properties	× 🕞 ISO-Mode	el 📄 Level 1	C Section 1	🚱 3D View 1	🕆 Nort	h 🛧 South	×
System Panel Glazed					1		
Search	٩			1			
Curtain Wall 1	- A	Щ Ц					
Exterior Glazing		No to					
Storefront		₩±!					
Empty System Panel		₩ L					
Empty		Ň+					
Stacked Wall		$-\mathbf{M}$				<u> </u>	
Exterior - Brick Over CMU w Me	etal Stud				- <u>-</u>		
System Panel		₩ ₩					
Glazed		Ŭ L				ł	
Solid		<u> </u>		4			
Basic Wall : Generic - 6"		8 T		ſ		1	1
Basic Wall : 000_Interior - 4 1/2" Partie	tion	Щ.					

SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

Chapter 12. Understand visibility settings, add/ edit floor & ceilings

Session Objectives

Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Understand View template, visibility graphics

- (CO 2) Understand View range
- (CO 3) Add/Edit Floors & Floor Properties
- (CO 4) Add/Edit Ceilings & Ceiling Properties



At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Decture Contents

(CO I) Understand View template, visibility graphics

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=96

[VIEW TEMPLATE] in Revit is a collection of view properties, such as a scale of a view, detail level, discipline, view ranges, orientations, model display, and visual settings. With using [VIEW TEMPLATE], you can apply standard settings to views.

For example, I can make a Floor plan view template to apply all my floor plans. The floor plans will have the same scale, detail level, and style of lines. And you can also set a Furniture plan template. On the floor plans, you can hide all door tags and window tags at once. View templates save much time when producing a set of construction documents.

To set a view template

- [STEP 1] Click [VIEW TEMPLATE] from [PROPERTIES] palette, Assign view template window will open
- [STEP 2] Select [ARCHITECTURAL PLAN]
- [STEP 3] Click [DUPLICATE] icon, and Name it [3/8" Floor Plan]
- [STEP 4] Update [VIEW SCALE] to [3/8"=1'-0"]
- [STEP 5] Click [EDIT] on V/G Overrides Model, then Visibility/Graphic Overrides for 3/8" Floor Plan window will open
- [STEP 6] You can hide categories that you don't want to show in the view by unchecking the categories.
- [STEP 7] Also, you and change the graphic styles by clicking [OVERRIDE]
- [STEP 8] Click [OK]s to apply



To apply the view template to other views

- [STEP 1] Select a view or multiple views
- [STEP 2] Click [VIEW TEMPLATE] from [PROPERTIES] palette
- [STEP 3] Select the view template you made for the selected views
- [STEP 4] Click [OK] to apply

Once you apply a view template, the visibility/graphic override, view scale, display model, detail level, view range, discipline, phase filter, and more items in the view templates will be deactivated on the view. To change the setting, you have to adjust in the view template, not individually.



If you want to set the view settings individually, you must select [NONE] for the view template.

For more information, please refer to this page for the view template.

(CO 2) Understand View range

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=96

[VIEW RANGE] is a set of horizontal planes that control the visibility and display of objects in a plan view.

To adjust view range

- [STEP 1] Click [VIEW RANGE] from [PROPERTIES] palette. If this is deactivated, check your view template and click [VIEW RANGE] from the template.
- [STEP 2] You define the ranges by adjusting the offset value
- [STEP 3] You can see the sample view range for better understanding by clicking [<< SHOW] button



• [STEP 4] Click [OK] to apply

For more information about [VIEW RANGE], please visit this page

[UNDERLAY] is a function to understand the relationship of components at different levels for coordination and construction.

To apply [UNDERLAY]

- [STEP 1] Open the second-floor plan
- [STEP 2] Click Range: Base Level and change the level that you want to look below
- [STEP 3] Click Range: Top Level and change the level that you want to 'lookup.'
- [STEP 4] For floor plans, the Underlay Orientation should be [LOOK DOWN] For RCPs, the Underlay Orientation should be [LOOK UP]



Once the underlay function is activated, you can see the gray lines. You are not able to click nor edit the underlay items.

This function is only for the working process. If you don't need the underlay items, please check [NONE] on Range: Base Level to deactivate the function.

For more information about [VIEW RANGE], please visit this page.

(CO 3) Add/Edit Floors & Floor Properties

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=96

Revit is a BIM software; it needs more information to generate 3D views and Drawings. When in plan view the drawing appears complete much like it does in AutoCAD. However, when you view the Revit model in a 3D view, the floors and ceilings are missing. Therefore, you need to model these elements as well.



There are multiple ways to create floors. I prefer to create a slab(without finishes) and then add finishes over the top of the slab.

To Add/Edit Floors

• [STEP 1] Select [FLOOR ARCHITECTURAL] from [ARCHITECTURE] tab, under [BUILD] panel

File	rchitect	ure	Structure	Precast I	nsert Ar	notate	Analyze	Massing 8	Site	Collaborate	View	Manage	Add-le	ns Modif						
b	0			Ø	0	F	P				-	0	O	AI	. []	X			X	
Modify	Wall	Door	Window	Component	Column	Roof	Ceiling	Floar Cu Sy	irtain Cu stem G	rtain Mullion Brid	Railing	g Ramp	Stair	Model Mo Text Lir	lel Model e Group	+ Room	Room Separator	Tag Room	Area	Area Boundary
Select +					1	FI	oor: Archit	ectural			C	irculation	<u>1</u>	M	del			Room 8	Area 🕶	
Properties					× 🖻	6m FI	oor: Struct	ural }												
P	Floor	Plan			+ 43	F	oor by Fac	e	_	7' - 3 3/4"			,	7	- 3 3/4"				7	- 3 3,4"
Chana Diana	1 mind 1				Tuna	G F	oor: Slab E	dge ¥											a.	4
Floor Plan:	Level 1				iype =			Ē						× × • •						
View Scale	- 4-		3/8" = 1	-0"								1					i			

- [STEP 2] Select a Floor Type. For the First Level of Eames House, we will use [Generic 12"], but we will modify the properties later.
- [STEP 3] Select the level where the floor is located. And specify height offset from the level if required.
- [STEP 4]Draw the boundary of the Floor plan. You can draw using straight lines or any of the other options. Make sure the boundary lines are connected and closed
- [STEP 5] Click the green checkmark to complete the sketch



• [STEP 6] Confirm the location on a section view or a 3D view

You can click [SECTION] from the [VIEW] tab, under the [CREATE] panel. And draw a section line for verification purposes.

Make sure your building pod must be below level 1.



Add a floor for the second level

- [STEP 1] Open [LEVEL 2] floor plan
- [STEP 2] Click [FLOOR] from [ARCHITECTURE] tab, under [BUILD] panel
- [STEP 3] Change the floor type to 3" LW Concrete on 2" Metal Deck, and verify the Level 2, and the Offset
- [STEP 4] Draw continued lines for the floor. If there are floor openings, draw the openings as well. If the openings are inside the boundary of the floor, Revit will recognize as it is opening.
- [STEP 5] Click [GREEN CHECK MARK] to complete the sketches



Edit Floor properties

You will change the thickness of the floor 12" to 2."

- [STEP 1] Select the first level floor from the 3D view
- [STEP 2] Click [EDIT TYPE] on [PROPERTIES] palette
- [STEP 3] Click [DUPLICATE] on [TYPE PROPERTIES]
- [STEP 4] Enter a new name. I recommend adding [000_] of the letter of the name.
 For example [000_Generic 2"]
- [STEP 5] then click [OK]

Properties			(30)	×				= 0	Sector I			
Floor Generic - 12*		•	Type Properties Family: System Family: Floor				× Lond	Name	000_Generic - 21		×	
Floors (1)	- Edit Ty	pe		Creative 102			Duralizata			-		111.
Constraints			iype:	Generic - 12		~	Dobicate	-				1 10 2
Level	Level 1						Rename		C 0	к с	ancel	· · · ·
Height Offset From Lev	el 0' 0"		T					1	1			
Room Bounding			Type Param	eters							1.1.1.	
Related to Mass				Parameter	Value		=			1		· ·
Structural		*	Construct	ion	and the second		2	100			·** .**	
Structural			Structure				1	1	1 - 3	1 1 1		
Enable Analytical Mode			Default Th	lickness	1. 0.				191	1 1 2 4		
Dimensions		*	Function		Interior						1. 14	1 1 2
Slope			Graphics				8				P. 1 . 1	1. 4.4
Perimeter	144' 8 1/2"		Coarse Sc	ale Fill Pattern							25.4.5	
Area	1070.79 SF		Coarse Sc	ale Fill Color	Black						1 1 1 1 1	
Volume	1070.79 CF		Materiale	and Einishes			T	1	2 .	14 C 14		
Elevation at Top	0' 0"		Structural	Material	s By Category's					and at		
Elevation at Bottom	-1'0"		Succura	Wateria	suy category.							
Thickness	1' 0"		Analytical Properties *									
Identity Data		*	Heat I ran	ster Coefficient (U)				st.				
Image			Thermal R	lesistance (R)				-				
Comments		114	Thermal N	Mass				-				
Mark			Absorptar	ice	0.700000			T ET				
Phasing		2	Roughnes	5	3							

- [STEP 6] Click [EDIT] for [STRUCTURE]
- [STEP 7] Change [2"] and click [OK] and [OK] to complete

Properties		6	1001	×						
Floor Generic - 12"			Edit A Famil Type	sembly y: Floor : 000 G	Floor 000_Generic ~ 2*					× .
Floors (1)	~ 61	dit Type	Total	thickness: 0' 2" ((Default)					
Constraints		*	Resis	tance (R): 0.000						
Level	Level 1		1	0.000	001011					
Height Offset From Level	0' 0"		Lay	ers						
Room Bounding			Г	Function	Material	Thickness	Wraps	Structural	Variable	
Related to Mass				- Sheden				Material		
Structural *		*		Core Boundary	Layers Above Wrap	0.0-		-		
Structural			2	Structure [1]	<by category=""></by>	0. 2.	J			
Enable Analytical Model			3	Core Boundary	Layers Below Wrap	00	1			
Dimensions		*		1						
Slope										
Perimeter	144' 8 1/2"									
Area	1070.79 SF									
Volume	1070.79 CF									
Elevation at Top	0' 0*									
Elevation at Bottom	-1' 0"									
					1	E	1			

Add Floor types

- [STEP 1] Click [FLOOR] from [ARCHITECTURE] tab, under [BUILD] panel
- [STEP 2] Select [Generic 12"]
- [STEP 3] Click [EDIT TYPE]
- [STEP 4] Click [DUPLICATE]
- [STEP 5] Rename to [000_TL_01], you will need [000_TL_02], and [000_CPT_01]
- [STEP 4] Click [EDIT] for [STRUCTURE]
- [STEP 5] Change the Function to [FINISH 1]
- [STEP 6] Change the Thickness to [1/2"]
- [STEP 7] Click <By Category>
- [STEP 8] Click [CREATE A NEW MATERIAL]
- [STEP 9] Rename the new material
- [STEP 10] Check [USE RENDER APPEARANCE]
- [STEP 11] Change the foreground pattern



- [STEP 12] Click [APPEARANCE] tab
- [STEP 13] Click [REPLACE THIS ASSET]
- [STEP 14] Find appropriate material from [APPEARANCE LIBRARY]
- [STEP 15] Click the [REPLACE] icon, and close the [ASSET BROWSER]
- [STEP 16] If needed, change the color
- [STEP 17] Click [OK]s to complete

operties		(i)	Ph + +		7	D			E Dmiart Ennerar - Esmer Moura
		Astert Browser			TX	Material Browser - Default New Material			7 X
Floor Generic - 12*		Search			9	1	Q identit	Graphics Appearance +	
ĸ	~ 9	Appearance Library: Ceramic: Tile			i≣ •	Project Materials: All T +	E. 00	in Squares - Beige	50
traints		Ta Celina	 Asset Name	Type Category		Name	*		
el pht Offset From Level on Bounding	0° 0 1/2°	The Ceremic	4in Squares williamond - Brown Appe	Ceramic Ceramic: Tile		000_TL_01	1	100	
ted to Mass		Fin Tile	6in Bricks - Lime Green Appe	Ceramic Ceramic: Tile		Acoustic Ceiling Tile 34 x 24			0.
ctural ble Analytical Model		Fin Fabric	6in Octagons - Burgundy Appe	Ceramic Ceramic Tile		Acoustic Ceiling Tile 24 x 48	► info	rmation	
usions		► The Rooming ► The Glass	6in Octagons - Dark Gray Appe	Ceramic Ceramic: Tile		Ar	* Cera	mik Type Ceramic	
ame	0.00 CF	Fin Liquid Fin Masoney	6in Octagons - Iceberg-Blue Appe	Ceramic Ceramic Tile		Air Infiltration Barrier		Color RGB 240 236 227	
tion at Top tion at Bottom	Varies Varies	Re Metallic Paint	Gin Octagons - Light Honey Appe	Ceramic Ceramic: Tile		Air Openings		Finish High Gloss / Glazed	
ty Data	1. 0.	Fin Miscellaneous	6in Octagons - Soft Green Appe	Ceramic Ceramic: Tile	Replace	s the asset in the Surfaces	***	Lelief Pattern	
ments	-	Ta Roofing	Fin Strutes - Beide Acoe	Ceramic Ceramic Tile	editor v asset.	ith this minum		int	
ig e Created	New Construction	Sitework	fin Strugger - Country Rose Anne	Ceramic Ceramic Tile		Material Libraries	*		
r Demolished	None	Wall Covering	win Appents - Country Rose Appe.,	County County Ind		B- Q- 🗖	**		
		The Walt Paint	the second second			ES			OK Cancel Apply

Add floors for finishes

- [STEP 1] Open a plan view to add the finish floor
- [STEP 2] Confirm the level on the [PROPERTIES]
- [STEP 3] Change the Height Offset From Level to [1/2"]
- [STEP 4] Draw Floor Boundary, please consider not to overleap with walls



(CO 4) Add/Edit Ceilings & Ceiling Properties

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=96

Add a ceiling

- [STEP 1] Open [LEVEL 1] ceiling plan
- [STEP 2] Click [CEILING] from [ARCHITECTURE] tab, under [BUILD] panel
- [STEP 3] Select [GWB on Mtl. Stud]
- [STEP 4] Confirm [LEVEL] is [LEVEL 1 CEILING] and [HEIGHT OFFSET FROM LEVEL] to [0'0"]. If you don't have a level for a ceiling, you can set your level to Level 1 and update the height offset from a level like 8'-0."
- [STEP 5] Draw the Ceiling boundary. You will need to draw an independent ceiling for each room.
- [STEP 6] Click the green checkmark to complete this command.



• Repeat this process to place a ceiling at level 2

Edit Ceiling properties

You will change the thickness of the ceiling 12" to 2."

- [STEP 1] Select the first level ceiling from the 3D view
- [STEP 2] Click [EDIT TYPE] on [PROPERTIES] palette
- [STEP 3] Click [DUPLICATE] on [TYPE PROPERTIES]
- [STEP 4] Enter a new name. I recommend adding [000_] of the letter of the name. For example, [000_GWB on Mtl.Stud-3"]
- [STEP 5] then click [OK][STEP 6] Click [EDIT] for [STRUCTURE]
- [STEP 7] Change [2 3/8"] for [METAL STUD LAYER] and click [OK] and [OK] to complete

Properties								₹ 🛅 Lave I
Compound C 000_GWB on	eiling Mtl. Stud-3*]	Edit As Family Type:	sembly Compound 000_GWB o	Ceiling n Mtl. Stud-3"			× ^ 3
Ceilings (1)	V E Edit	Type	Total	thickness: 0'3"				-
Constraints		*	Resist	ance (R): 13.8403 (h	·ft ² ·°F)/BTU			
Level	Level 1 Ceiling	1	Therm	al Mass: 0.7211 BTU	l/°F			
Height Offset From Level	0' 0"		Lay	ers				
Room Bounding					_		1	
Dimensions		*		Function	Material	Thickness	Wraps	
Slope				Core Boundary	Lavers Above Wrap	0. 0.	-	
Perimeter	152' 9 69/256"		2	Structure [1]	Metal Stud Layer	0' 2 3/8"		
Area	516.44 SF		3	Core Boundary	Layers Below wrap	0 0		
Volume	129.11 CF		4	Finish 2 [5]	Gypsum Wall Board	0' 0 5/8"		
Identity Data		*						
Image								
Comments								1
Mark								
Phasing		*						Personal
Phase Created	New Construction							

SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

Autodesk.Help. (2020, May 13). About View Templates. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/ support/revit-products/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2018/ENU/Revit-Customize/files/GUID-C3B5FB82-3247-48F6-82F0-73011A0F8027-htm.html#:~:text=A%20view%20template%20is%20a,consistency%20across %20construction%20document%20sets

Autodesk.Help. (2019, February 18). About the View Range. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/revit-products/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2019/ENU/Revit-DocumentPresent/files/GUID-58711292-AB78-4C8F-BAA1-0855DDB518BF-htm.html

Autodesk.Help. (2019, February 18). Create an Underlay. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/revit-products/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2019/ENU/Revit-DocumentPresent/files/GUID-77184183-E245-4F3B-8486-617E9A9FB296-htm.html

Chapter 13. Add/edit stairs, rails, & roof



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Add/Edit Stair – three types of staircases (CO 2) Add/Edit Railing (CO 3) Add/Edit Roof



At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Decture Contents

(CO I) Add/Edit Stair – three types of staircases

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=98

- Revit provides various types of staircases, and it is modifiable.
- Revit stair automatically calculates the number of stair runs, automatically creating landing, supports, and even handrails.
- In this tutorial, the instructor will demonstrate four types of staircases a straight stair, two runs (a switchback stair), a spiral, and a custom with sketch in another Revit file only for reference.
- For the Eames house, students will only need a spiral staircase.
- For more information about Revit stairs, please visit this page

To create a straight stair

Be aware of the overall size of the staircase and create walls for the staircase before you create a staircase in Revit. If it is an open staircase, please use the reference plane for a guideline.

• [STEP 1] Open floor plan views (e.g., Level 1 floor plan view and Level 2 floor plan view) and 3D view or a section view with a perspective view to see the height and overall shape of the staircase. And view change to Window Tile view (WT)



- [STEP 2] Draw Detail Line (DL) for the outlines of the staircase. You may turn on the CAD drawing that you already imported.
- [STEP 3] Click [STAIR] from [ARCHITECTURE] tab, under [BUILD] panel
- [STEP 4] Select [STRAIGHT] from [MODIFY/CREATE STAIR], under [COMPONENT] panel

• [STEP 5] Select a center point for the stair start point on a plan view, then Revit automatically calculates and shows how many stairs are needed to reach the next floor. Then, click the endpoint on the current view to finish

File Architecture	Structure Precast In	sert Annotate Anal	ze Massing & Site Colla	borate View Mana	ge Add-Ins Mo	odify Create Stair	•		
	🗎 💥 🎉 Cope •		: PKI PL + + *	8.00 .	HIG X	Run	10 7 F H -	5	= F 5
Modify	aste 🖬 🖓 Lour •	1 40 · ++ 00		1.= 1.	15	C Landing	5	Conned:	Set Show Ref Viewe
Select - Propertier	Tinhoard Geom	atn	Madify	View Measure	Create Mo	de C	omponentr	Multistone Stairs	Work Plane
Location Line: Run: Ce	nter v Offse	et 0' 0"	Actual Run Width: 3' 0"	Auton	natic Landing		omponents	manuscory stans	TORPIERE
Properties		X 🖻 Level 1	x				= @	(3D)	
				11 1		() () () () () () () () () ()	9.	/	1 1
Assembled S	taw 11° iread	+		0			Q. <	/	
Stair	- 🔡 Ebit	lyp=				0.00.	P4	-	
Constraints		*					-		
Base Level	Level 1					N 1			
Base Offset	0' 0"		-					>	
Top Level	Level 2						1	/	
Top Offset	0' 0"	and and a second s		1 A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A			1	/	
Desired Stair Height	10' 0"			1				1	
Dimensions		\$	5						
Desired Number of Risers	18	1 I	0						
Actual Number of Risers	1								~
Actual Riser Height	0' 6 171/256"								
Actual Tread Depth	0' 11"								
Tread/Riser Start Numbe	r 1		3	0					
Identity Data		*		12 RUTAS CREP	TED, IF REMAINING				
Image		1				,		>>	
Comments								1	
Mark							× /		
Phasing		* 1/8" = 1'-0"		Te <			>	/	
Phase Created	New Construction	En Louis 2	-				=	/	
Phase Demolished	None	Level 2					In I		

- [STEP 6] Then, the preview will show on all the views. If it looks OK, click the green checkmark to finish. If it needs changes, the types of family, click family type on [PROPERTIES] palette, and select the desired family. If you do not have a desired family for the stair, load the family first
- [STEP 7] If the stair run width need a modification, click the run, then change the width by adjusting the arrows If the stair Riser Height or/and Tread Depth change, click [EDIT TYPE] and change the Type Properties. Do not forget, if you change the type properties, all types will change. To prevent this, please [DUPLICATE] and edit.

moperpies		ALL INVEST			* U		 Project prowser - cames_house_Project_t.
Assembled	Stair			Type Properties		×	III (0) Views (all) III - Structural Plans
7° max rises	r 11" tread		S	Eamly: System Family: Assembled Stair	₩ 1000		E Floor Plans
	(III core		24	a second second second			Level 1
Stairs (1)	- DE cost type		*	Type: 7" max riser 11" tread	V Dupicate		Bast
Constraints		E	+		Destant		Cite.
Base Level	Level 1		Second de		Zarine		Calina Dime
Base Offset	0. 0.		+	Type Parageters			lauft
Top Level	Level 2		A	Parameter	Value		land 2
Top Offiet	0. 0.		4				Lord .
Desired Stair Height	10 0		******	Calculation Rules			In an Mars
Dimensions	3	5		Maximum Fiser Height	V r		
Desired Number of Rise	rs 18	-		Minimum Tread Depth	V III		E convertions (bending convertion)
Actual Number of Risen	\$ 18		the second se	Minimum Kun Width	3.0		CORR Numb
Actual Riter Height	0" 6 171/256"		and and	Calculation Rules	Ed#		STREET Fourth
Actual Tread Depth	0' 11"			Construction	4		STELES West
Tread/Riser Start Number	er 1			Run Type	2" Tread 1" Nosing 1/4" Riser		See In the second
Identity Data	5	t.		Landing Type	Non-Monolithic Landing		State in the state in the
Image			UP	Function	Interior		Second In Charts (all)
Comments				Supports	2		Constant of the second
Mark				Right Support	Stringer (Closed)		States in the former
Phasing		18. * 1.4. 🗆 🖳 🕐 👘 👘 🔊 1	CR Te <	Right Support Type	Stringer - 2* Width		Processor in the coups
Phase Created	New Construction			Right Lateral Offset	10 UT		STATUS
Phase Demolished	None		1	Left Support	Stringer (Closed)		333355
				Left Support Type	Stringer - 2" Width		23332
				Left Lateral Offset	0.0		99828
			DN	Middle Support	0		22333
				Middle Support Type	<none></none>		223322
				Middle Support Number	0		662235
				Graphics	2		
				Cut Mark Turne	Seale Zoran		5532E
					, and a start of the start of t		222255
				Understating Lists			255322
				Type Image			668888
				Neynobe			
				Model			
				Tran Comments			
				Type comments			222555
				Description			25332
				and a second sec			5532 P
				What do Press properties do?			
			Contraction of the				5 A C A C A C A C A C A C A C A C A C A
				and Bases	OK Cancel Appendix		
				L			

- [STEP 8] Click [GREEN CHECKMARK] to complete
- [STEP 9] Remove the Detail lines or the Reference Plans that you used for the stair
- [STEP 10] If you found errors on your stair, click [EDIT STAIRS] to fix the error

To create a two-runs stair (a switchback stair)

- [STEP 1] Open floor plan views (e.g., Level 1 floor plan view and Level 2 floor plan view) and 3D view or a section view with a perspective view to see the height and overall shape of the staircase. And view change to Window Tile view (WT)
- [STEP 2] Draw Detail Line (DL) for the outlines of the staircase. You may turn on the CAD drawing you already imported.



- [STEP 3] Click [STAIR] from [ARCHITECTURE] tab, under [BUILD] panel
- [STEP 4] Select [STRAIGHT] from [MODIFY/CREATE STAIR], under [COMPONENT] panel
- [STEP 5] Select a center point for the stair start point on a plan view, then Revit automatically calculates and shows how many stairs are needed to reach the next floor. Then, click the second point on the current view to create the landing start

Then, click the third point on the current view to create the second stair start point

Then, click the endpoint on the current view to finish



• [STEP 6] Then, the preview will show in all the views. If it looks OK, click the green checkmark to finish. If it needs changes, the types of family, click family type on [Properties] palette, and select a desire family. If you do not have a desire family for the stair, load the family first

- Preter view with the set of the s
- [STEP 7] If the stair run width needs a modification, click the run, then change the width by adjusting the arrows

• [STEP 8] Click [GREEN CHECKMARK] to complete



• [STEP 9] Remove the Detail lines or the Reference Plans that you used for the stair

To create a spiral stair

- [STEP 1] Open floor plan views (e.g., Level 1 floor plan view and Level 2 floor plan view) and 3D view or a section views with a perspective views to see the height and overall shape of the staircase. And view change to Window Tile view (WT)
- [STEP 2] Draw Detail Line (DL) for the outlines of the staircase. You may turn on the CAD drawing you already imported.



- [STEP 3] Click [STAIR] from [ARCHITECTURE] tab, under [BUILD] panel
- [STEP 4] Select [FULL STEP SPIRAL] from [MODIFY/CREATE STAIR], under [COMPONENT] panel
- [STEP 5] Select a center point of the staircase start point on a plan view, then Revit automatically calculates and shows how many stairs are needed to reach the next floor. Then, click the center point of the run start on the current view to create the staircase.



- [STEP 6] Then, the preview will show on all the views. If it looks OK, click the green checkmark to finish. If needs changes, the types of family, click family type on [PROPERTIES] palette and select a desired family. If you do not have a desired family for the stair, load the family first
- [STEP 7] If the stair run width needs a modification, click the run, then change the width by adjusting the arrows



• [STEP 8] Click [GREEN CHECKMARK] to complete



• [STEP 9] Remove the Detail lines or the Reference Plans that used for the stair

Complete the staircase for the Eames house project with [FULL STEP SPIRAL] tool. It may need some adjustment because

of the structure and shape. Please experiment for the staircase.



To create a custom stair

• [STEP 1] Open floor plan views (e.g., Level 1 floor plan view and Level 2 floor plan view) and 3D view or a section view with a perspective view to see the height and overall shape of the staircase. And view change to Window Tile view (WT)



• [STEP 2] Draw [BOUNDARY]



[STEP 3] Draw [RISER]

•



• [STEP 4] Draw [STAIR PATH]



[STEP 5] Click [GREEN CHECKMARK] to finish

•



• [STEP 6] If needed, click [FLIP] the direction of the staircase



[STEP 7] Click [GREEN CHECKMARK] to complete the tool

٠



Autodesk provides sample stairs and railings. Please download the samples by clicking <u>this page</u> and copy and paste that which you want to use in your project. This process will load the family files to your Revit file

(CO 2) Add/Edit Railing

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=98

Typically, railings are automatically created when a staircase is made

For more information about Railings, please read this page

However, many times, your railings need modifications.

To extend your railings

- [STEP 1] click the railing
- [STEP 2] click [EDIT PATH]
- [STEP 3] edit/add the path



To edit handrail

- [STEP 1] If a Handrail path needs changing, you can select handrail only by pressing the [TAB] key
- [STEP 2] click [EDIT RAIL]
- [STEP 3] click [EDIT PATH] it would be better to work in Section or a 3d view



To change the handrail type, change the family type from [PROPERTIES] palette

To create a path without a stair

- [STEP 1] Click [RAILING]
- [STEP 2] Click [SKETCH PATH]
- [STEP 3] Sketch a path with a drawing tool on a plan view



• [STEP 4] Click [GREEN CHECKMARK] to finish

(CO₃) Add/Edit Roof

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=98

In this session, I will demonstrate the two types of roof; one is the Eames house roof – Flat roof and a typical residential roof – Hip roof

There are ten standard roof shape models in the Revit tutorial. Please watch this tutorial for your other projects 10 Common Roof Shapes Modeled in Revit Tutorial

Please find Autodesk provided roof tutorials from this link

If you want to create complex roof shapes in Revit, please watch this YouTube video <u>3 Complex Roof Shapes in Revit</u>

For the Eames House project, you will create two models, which are the roof on the top of the metal deck and the Edge of the roof.

Add a flat roof

- [STEP 1] From the Project Browser, switch to the Roof plan.
- [STEP 2] In the Properties, with nothing selected, set the Underlay to level 2.
- [STEP 3] From the Architectural tab, click the small arrow on the roof] > Click [ROOF BY FOOTPRINT]



- [STEP 4] Use the Draw tool to create a boundary.
 - Make sure you check Basic Roof Generic 9" > Duplicate 3."
 - Base level Roof
 - Base offset from level 0' 0."
 - Uncheck Defines slope
 - Offset 0' 0."
- [STEP 5] Once the boundary line is done, click the green checkmark
- [STEP 6] Your roof will be over the Metal deck; you can move the roof above the metal deck



• [STEP 7] You may add a point / a line for slope for a roof drain, click [ADD POINT] and click a point on the roof and change the height.



To create a gutter

- [STEP 1] From the Architectural tab, click the small arrow on the roof] > Click [ROOF: GUTTER]
- [STEP 2] Default will be Gutter Bevel 5" x 5". We will change to 6"x 6."
- [STEP 3] Click [EDIT TYPE] > [DUPLICATE] > name change [000_Gutter Bevel 6" x 6"] > Click [OK]
- [STEP 4] Click Gutter Profile-Bevel: 5"x5" on profile
- [STEP 5] Change to 6"x 6" > Click [OK]
- [STEP 6] From the ISO view, click the top edges of the roof
- [STEP 7] To finish, [ESC] key



Add a hip roof (combined)

- [STEP 1] From the Project Browser, switch to the Roof plan.
- [STEP 2] In the Properties, with nothing selected, set the Underlay to level 2 or level 1.
- [STEP 3] From the Architectural tab, click the small arrow on the roof] > Click [ROOF BY FOOTPRINT]
- [STEP 4] Use the Draw tool to create a boundary.
 - Make sure you check Basic Roof Generic 9" > Duplicate 3."
 - Base level Roof
 - Base offset from level 0' 0."
 - Check Defines slope
 - Slope 9"/12."
 - Offset 1' 6."
- [STEP 5] Select 3 lines do not have a slope, uncheck [DEFINES SLOPE]



• [STEP 6] Click [GREEN CHECKMARK] when it is done



- [STEP 7] From the Architectural tab, click the small arrow on the roof > Click [ROOF BY EXTENSION]
- [STEP 8] Revit will ask you to select a work plan > Select [PICK A PLANE] > Pick a face of wall where the roof profile

will start

- [STEP 9] Revit will ask you to select Roof reference level and offset > Click [OK]
- [STEP 10] Draw a continued open line for the roof on a Front view



- [STEP 11] Click Green checkmark when it is done
- [STEP 12] On the plan view, you will adjust the depth of the roof
- [STEP 13] To fix the separated roof, you may use [JOIN/UNJOIN ROOF] on the Modify tab
- [STEP 14] Click the profile first and click the face where the profile will meet



- [STEP 15] To meet all wall to the Roof, Select all walls
- [STEP 16] Click [ATTACH TOP/BASE]
- [STEP 17] Click the roof, you may get a warning, but it is OK.



SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

Autodesk.Help. (2020, September 10). Stairs. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/</u>revit-products/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2019/ENU/Revit-Model/files/GUID-B1B305DF-8DBE-44A7-A7C6-16B70A3B580E-htm.html

Autodesk.Help. (2018, September 26). Revit Sample Stair and Railing Files. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/revit-products/getting-started/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2018/ENU/Revit-GetStarted/files/GUID-899499DB-C96A-4C66-8500-0CC4E3FD62B1-htm.html

Autodesk.Help. (2020, September 10). Railings. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/</u> support/revit-products/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2019/ENU/Revit-Model/files/GUID-447460EC-DAC6-481B-8F0A-1AED56D51D48-htm.html

Balkan Architect. (2019, January 8). 10 Common Roof Shapes Modeld in Revit Tutorial. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=enrmG9CMUfE

Autodesk.Help. (2018, September 26). Revit Roof Sample File. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from https://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/revit-products/getting-started/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2018/ENU/Revit-GetStarted/files/GUID-785EDA82-B8DD-4BF3-A508-E7FC4860E24D-htm.html

Balkan Architect. (2018, March 31). 3 Complex Roof Shapes in Revit. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from <u>https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tTmBA4mMKK8</u>

Chapter 14. Add/edit windows, doors, lighting fixtures, furniture, tags, & sheets

Session Objectives

Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Understand the concept of family file
(CO 2) Add/Edit Doors and Windows
(CO 3) Add Tags
(CO 4) Add/Edit Lighting fixtures
(CO 5) Add/Edit Titleblocks
(CO 6) Insert Plan views and symbols – North arrow and graphic scale

👻 Session Highlights

At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Decture Contents

(CO I) Understand the concept of family file

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=100

About Revit Families

- A Revit family is a group of elements with a common set of properties, called parameters, and a related graphical representation
- All of the elements that you add to your Revit projects are created with families.
- For example, the structural members, walls, roofs, windows, and doors that you use to assemble a building model, as well as the callouts, fixtures, tags, and detail components that you use to document it, are all created with families.

For more information about the Revit family, please see this page <u>Autodesk Knowledge – Revit Family</u>

To create a new family

 Click [File] on the menu > Click [New] > Click [Family] > Select a template from library > create the model and parameter

Architecture	Structure Precast Insert	Annotate Analyze Massi	ng & Site Collaborate V	iem Manage Add-Ins	Modify E					
30	Creates a Revit file.			🦐 🔿 🗞 🗛	110			公司中心	v * # ■ ■ 4 5 🖻	
New: 0	Project Creates a Revit project	g Floor	Curtain Curtain Mullion System Grid	Railing Ramp Stair Mod Tex Circulation	el Model Model Roo t Line Group Model	m Room Tag Ar Separator Room Room & Are	Acto	By Shaft Wall Vertici Face Opening	al Domner Gold Set Show Ref Viewer Place Datum Work Plane	
Open +	Creates a set of custom to use in projects.	a components								Project Browser - Earnes_House_,- X A = (0) Views (all) D. Eleve Plane
Con some	Opens a template for c	reating a							8	E Level 1
Carrola +	conceptual massing mo	odel	R. New Family - Sele	ct Template File				7 X		Level 2 Reaf
- maine -	Title Block							The second s		Ste
EN.	Opens a template for c Block family.	treating a Title	Look in:	Family Templates			× + + >	C News .		E Ceiling Plans
Export +			- A	Name Date	Type Size	Tags	reven			Level 1
	Annotation Symbol	i to identify	-							Level 2 Road
Pint +	elements in the project	L L	HITPY	1.						= 3D Views
-	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1			Chinese Couch	Taulah Taulah Inc.	French Common				ISO-view-01
-				Chinese Czech	rigion rial	French German				(30)
Close			Distances							Elevations (Building Elevation
1.00									STATE	Last North
	Orton	er Fut Best	N. Compile			10.11			CHE VID	South
	- obide	a lanner MS		Italian Japanese	Korean Polish	Portuguese Russian			ALA.	West
Color Scheme	(none)								V/17	Sections (Building Section)
Default Analysis Display	None		The Delivery of the local division of the lo							Section 1
Sun Path			and the second se							Section 2
Underlay	2									Legends
Range: Base Level	Level 2			Spanish Traditional						Schedules/Quantities (all)
Range: Top Level	Roof		and the second se	Chinese						OD Familian
Underlay Orientation	Look down									a led Ground
Extents	8		(here)							Revit Links
Crop View	4									
Lrop Region Visible	8									
View Dates										
Associated I must	Royd		Training.	Ela name:						
Scope Box	None			the state of the state of the	ant, on the					
Depth Clipping	at the		·	rives of type: Family Template	nes (*/m)		4	and the second se		
Identity Data	2		Tools +				Open	Carcel		
View Template	3/8" Floor Plan									
View Name	Roof									
Dependency	Independent									
Title on Sheet										

• However, A beginner may elect to not create a new family due to the complexity of the process. Instead, you may want to start with a family that has similar attributes and edit accordingly.

To load Family files from the Revit library

- Click [Load Family] from [Insert] tab, under [Load from Library] panel > Find the library folder from your computer > Select a family / families to load > Click [OPEN]
- Then, you can confirm and find the loaded families from the [Project Browser] under the [Family] category



• You can load as many families as possible but you should consider file size.

Find and download Revit families from external sources (recommended websites by the instructor)

- BimObject <u>https://www.bimobject.com/en-us</u>
 - Manufacturer upload Revit Family files
 - Previously named Autodesk Seek
 - Most of the files are reliable, some advertisements added
- Revit City <u>https://www.revitcity.com/index.php</u>
 - The user shared Revit Family website
 - Many designers, practitioners, and students use this website
 - Some files may cause issues to your project
- BIM Smith <u>https://market.bimsmith.com/</u>
 - Mix of free and paid Revit Families
 - Great collection of products
- NBS National BIM Library https://www.nationalbimlibrary.com/en/
 - UK based the best BIM object website
 - Manufacturers website
 - Most reliable but hard to find out

Purge Revit families

- Family management is one of the keys to managing your Revit file. If you want to delete unused family files, click [Purge Unused] from the Manage tab.
- Use caution when using this function; you will lose all family and views you are not using. I recommend you make a copy or save as the original file and [Purge Unused].
- ⊗ ⊞ ∩ 20.00 3 (1) (5) (6) (T) (8) 2 E Edit Typ urge Un ł 0 OK. The file size reduced, then you have a lighter file to handle Eames_House_Project_Vongyeon_Cho_14.rvt 0 9/11/2020 11:44 AM Autodesk Revit Pr... 13,428 KB Eames_House_Project_Yongyeon_Cho_14-Purged.rvt 2 9/11/2020 12:13 PM Autodesk Revit Pr ... 8,932 KB
- Click [Purge Unused] Number of items checked until "0".

(CO 2) Add/Edit Doors and Windows

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=100

Add a door on a Wall

- [STEP 1] Click [Door] from the [Architecture] tab, under [Built] panel or press [DR] as a shortcut
- [STEP 2] Select door type from the [Properties] palette.
 - If you need to load a new type, click the [Modify/Place Door] tab and click [Load Family], Double click [Doors] Folder, find out the family that you want from the sub-folders
 - If you cannot find the door family that you want, you may search on various websites above and load into the project file

- If you found the type you want, but you do not find the size of the door, you click [Edit Type] and Duplicate the type and change the values
- [STEP 3] Place the door near the wall. Use [Space bar] to change the direction of the door. It shows the location of the door that will be placed. Click the location that you want.
- [STEP 4] Once you placed the door, you can change the direction by clicking arrows, and you can change the exact location of the door. Typically, the distance between the wall to the door is 4."
- [STEP 5] If you need to change the door type, click and change the type from the Properties panel



Complete to add all doors in the floor plans for the project

Add a window on a wall

- [STEP 1] Click [Window] from the [Architecture] tab, under [Build] panel or, press [WN] as a shortcut
- [STEP 2] Select a window type from the [Properties] palette.
- [STEP 3] Adding a window is the same sequence as adding a door.
- [STEP 4] You can modify the sill height when you add a window.

The Eames House project doesn't have a window.

Add a skylight on a roof

- [STEP 1] Click [Window] from the [Architecture] tab or press [WN] as a shortcut
- [STEP 2] If you do not find a skylight from the [Properties] palette, click [Load family] > find the Skylight family under the Window folder from the Revit library > click [Open]

er fa bru	×	• 回 evi	13		Project Browser - East
in and	\wedge	^			
36° × 48°			1		Level 1
	R Load Family			7 ×	Level 2
dows 🗸 🖽 Edit Type					Roof
nts R	Look Inc Windows			- 🗢 📑 🗙 💐 Views 🔹	Site
pt 5.0'	A Name	Date modified	Tune Size	A Preview	E Celing Plans
Data A	Alastad Escultur	2/10/2020 11:40 044	Ela fablas	10 C	Level 1
	Custain Wall-Ampire da	1/18/3010 3/25 044	Autoriaria Parist Es 201 VD		Boof
ents /	Distance - Concise da	1/18/2019 3/22 PM	Autoriark Pault Es 206 KB		I I Nows
	Palastance Window Evel da	1/1E/2019 3/33 PM	Autodeck Resit Es 221 KE		I ISO-view-0
	Childebt-Flat da	1/18/2010 3/35 PM	Autodeck Revit Fa 256 KR		(3D)
nogra C V	En source as a serie of the series of the se		ALESSARS REVIEW		Elevations (Built
	Skylight-Pyramid da	1/18/2019 1-35 PM	Autodeck Revit Fa., 520 KR		East
	Skylight-Ridge.da	1/18/2019 3-35 PM	Autodesk Revit Fa., 441 KB		North
	Skylight-Roundurfa	1/18/2019 3-35 PM	Autodesk Revit Fa. 360 KB		South
	Skylight-Top-Hung.fis	1/18/2019 3-35 PM	Autodesk Revit Fa		I West
	Window-Awning-Double-Horizontal.rfa	1/18/2019 3-35 PM	Autodesk Revit Fa. 916 KB		E Sections (Build
	Window-Awning-Double-Vertical.rfa	1/15/2019 3-35 PM	Autodesk Revit Fa 900 KB		Section 1
	Window-Awning-Single.da	1/18/2019 3:35 PM	Autodesk Revit Fa., 812 KB	-	Section 2
X	Window-Awning-Triple-Horizontal da	1/18/2019 3:35 PM	Autodesk Revit Fa 960 KB		Legenot
	Window-Awning-Triple-Vertical.rfa	1/18/2019 3:35 PM	Autodesk Revit Fa 940 KB		Et Sheets (All)
	Window-Awning-Variable.na	1/16/2019 3:33 PM	Autodesk Revit Fa 636 KB	~	and an and a street of the str
					= RN Groups
	File name: Skylott-Filet.rfa				the second se
	Hie name: Skylight-Piet.rta				- exe Revit Links
	File name: Skylpht-Hat.rts	u .		*	ee Revit Links

- [STEP 3] The Skylight for Eames House is 5'X5' Flat, so the type should be made by duplicating the existing one.
- [STEP 4] Open [3D view] > click the appropriate location where the skylight is supposed to be located > open [Roof] view > update location of the skylight with dimensions



- [STEP 5] You may notice that the skylight only opens the roof, not the ceilings you may make. You must make a hole to open the ceilings. Click [Shaft] from the [Architecture] tab, under [Openning] panel > Open the plan below the roof level. For Eames house, it is Level 2 > Draw the opening. It must be a little smaller than the skylight size and click the [green checkmark]
- [STEP 6] Make sure the base constraint is Level 2, and the Top constraint is Up to Level: Roof, Top Offset 1'. Relocate the Skylight.



Note. If [Shaft] tool is not working, please try this

• Click [Edit In-Place] > Click [Void Forms] > Select [Void Extrusion] from [Create] tab > Draw lines > click the [Green checkmark] to finish and double-check the void penetrate

Add a door / a window on a curtain wall

• [STEP 1] Adding a curtain wall door or window is not under the Door or Window from the [Architecture] tab. To switch a panel to a door or a window, you must select the panel first by pressing the [Tab] key.



- [STEP 2] You might find the door from the [Properties] palette.
 - If the curtain wall door was not loaded, you need to load the door first and then change the properties palette.
 - To load the door family, click [Load Family] from the [Insert] tab
 - Find "Door-Curtain-Wall-Single-Glass.rfa" from the Doors folder > Open
 - Find "Curtain Wall-Awning.rfa" from the Windows folder > Open
 - Find "Sliding_Curtain_Wall_Door_12253.rfa" from Canvas and download to your project folder > Open
- [STEP 3] Change the type from the properties palette.



Complete to update all curtainwall doors and curtainwall windows for the project

(CO 3) Add Tags

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=100

Add door and window tags

- [STEP 1] Click [Tag by Category] from the [Annotate] tab, under [Tag] panel or (TG) for the shortcut
- [STEP 2] The Door tag setting can be made a distance (1/4") from the door
- [STEP 3] Once you click a door, the tag will show
- [STEP 4] The number may show or may not show. If not, you can make a number
- [STEP 5] You can also tag both the curtain wall door and windows with a door and window tag.



Complete to update all tags for doors and windows for the project

(CO 4) Add/Edit Lighting fixtures

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=100

Load Lighting Fixtures

Load Lighting families by clicking Load Family. You can find Revit lighting families from Lighting > Architectural > Internal folder from the Revit library. You can load all lighting fixtures from the folder or only selected lighting fixtures to your project.

If you want a unique lighting fixture, please download it from various websites and save it in your project folder for future use.

Add Lighting fixtures

- [STEP 1] Open [Level 1] Ceiling plan from the [Project Browser]
- [STEP 2] Click [Component] (CM) to place lighting fixtures from the [Architecture] tab
- [STEP 3] Select a family and a family type that you want to add on your ceiling plan. You can search the Lighting family as well
- [STEP 4] Select [Downlight Recessed Can]
- [STEP 5] Place the lighting fixture on the Utility room ceiling. You may need to switch the placement option. Does not

need to be accurate.

• [STEP 6] Make dimensions (DM) and use Align (AL) for the accurate dimension

To see the floor plan for the positioning of the furniture, Select Level 1 for Base Level, Leve 2 for Top-level, "lookup" for Underlay orientation, and then you can see the floor plan on your ceiling plan for lighting layout.



Complete lighting layout with dimensions on the ceiling plans

(CO 5) Add/Edit Titleblocks

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=100

Create sheets

- [STEP 1] Click [Sheet] from the [view] tab, under [Sheet Composition] panel
- [STEP 2] New Sheet window will pop up to create sheets in your project. Click [Load...].
- [STEP 3] The load Family browser will pop up. Find [Titleblocks] folder > Open [B 11 x 17 Horizontal] file > click [OK]
 > Click [OK] to load on your project file.
- [STEP 4] You can find your A101 Unnamed on your project browser, once you click [+] mark next to [sheet (all)]

File Architecture	Structure Precast In	sert Annotate Anal	te Massing & Site Collaborate (View	Manage Add-Ins. Modify	(b) +				
Select +	Vanhamp mater Loss m Regiment Graphics		Can Review Review		Prese Diamong Display	Arg Lagerthe Armenuer wrom Order University	Marchine Dates States	Tate Tal.	ant Anna T
Properties		-		*				100°.	toject Browser - Earnes, House, Proj., ;; (0), Views (all) ;; Floor Plans Level 1 (and 2)
Floor Plan: Level 1	→ Eli Edit 1	bpe	Navi Sheet	×	R Load Fuelds			7 ×	Roof
Granhier		•			W room anoli			1 1	Site
View Scale	Mrst-g		Select titleblocks:	Load	Look in	Titleblacks	- + K X	Vens -	Ceiling Plans
Scale Value 1:	12						Preview		Level 1
Display Model	Normal		E1 30 x 42 Horuprise (E1 30x42 Horizontal None		5 m ^	Name	Date modified		Level 2
Detail Level	Fine	3	10.2		-	E1 30 x 42 Horizontal.rfa	1/18/2019 3:35 PA	_	Roof
Parts Visibility	Show Original	- 0			Hittery.	E 34 x 44 HorizontaLrfa	1/18/2019 3:35 PM		B 3D Views
Visibility/Graphics Over	Edit_				16	D 22 x 34 Horizontal.rfa	1/18/2019 3:35 PA		ISO-view-01
Graphic Display Options	Ede	1	7			C 17 x 22 Horizontal.rfa	1/18/2019 3:35 PA		(30)
Orientation	Project North		-		Docoverts	B 11 x 17 Horizontal.fa	1/18/2019 3:35 PA	Contraction of the local division of the loc	Elevations (Building Elevation)
Wall Join Display	Clean all wall joins	A come of the				A 8.5 x 11 Vertical fa	1/18/2019 3:35 PA		East
Discipline	Architectural								North
Show Hidden Lines	By Discipline				and the second second				South
Color Scheme Location	Background		Falsed also shall be added as		- Internet				- West
Color Scheme	<none></none>		Seeu pace ane sierai						Sections (Building Section)
Default Analysis Display	None		New		and the second se				Section 1
Underlay		8			Har Marian				Section 2
Range: Base Level	None								En Legends
Range: Top Level	Unbounded								El Schedules/Quantities (all)
Underlay Orientation	Look down				012_Re#				and several (and
Extents		*	-		-				in in course
Crop View						<	>		Providence Providence
Crop Region Visible					Librareat	File name: 8 11 x 17 Horizontal.rfa	· · ·		and they are a start
Annotation Crop						Files of type: All to provided Files (* da * adult)			
View Range	Eds.					the state of a sector matures (state transf)			
Associated Level	Level 1				Tools -		Open	Cancel	
Scope Box	None			OK Cannel	H				
Depth Clipping	10.50			un corco		KALL A			
Identity Data	-			711	@				
view remplate	3/8" Floor Plan	a second				and the second se			
view reame	Leves 1				P	#-#185			
Dependency	Independent			1					

• [STEP 5] If you need more sheets for other views, you can click sheet] from the [View] tab, or you can click the Sheets on Project Browser, and mouse right-click and select New Sheets



- [STEP 6] If you want to change the size of the sheet you already loaded, you can click the title block and change the type on the Properties palette. You can change the Titleblock format that you already loaded
- [STEP 7] On your Titleblock, you should add the project information and the sheet information.

Properties X B 11 # 17 Fonzonsi The Bocks (1) Social Sector 2000 Control C	C Love 2 E Lover T E Lover T	A301 - Unranted D A102 - Sheet Name X		Project Desser - Larme, House, - 2 Project Desser - Larme, House, - 2 Pro Plans ProPlans Pro Plans Pro Plans Pro Plans Pro
Divert Woldt Dr. 11* Divert Hoging Deart : File Path Children's ongveent One -	Client Name Project Name	No. Description Date	Sheet Name Project number 2000.01.01 Date 01012020 Drawn by Yoor name Checked by Checker Scale	West Section Dubling Section Section 2 Section 2 Se

- Once you click the Titleblock, you can add more information. Do not double click. If you double click and open the family file, you are editing the family file.
- Under the Owner, we would typically designate the client's name. In this case, you can add ARTID263
- For Project Name, you can add your project name, Eames House Project
- For Unnamed, it typically designated for the Sheet name, for example, Floor Plan Level 1, RCP Level 2, Site Plan, or more
- For Project number, you will make your own. I typically make 20.263.01 (Year.Course number.Project number)
- The issue date will be the submission date
- The author is your name
- Checker is your instructor's name

Note. This Sheet information will not change even if you change the Titleblock type. And the Project name, Project number, Client, and Issue date will not change even if you add new sheets. But you should add Drawn by and Checked by for all sheets

Edit Titleblocks family file

- [STEP 1] Once you double click the Titleblock, the family file will open
- [STEP 2] I recommend saving this family before you start to edit to preserve the original file.
 - Do not forget to add "000" and save the file in your project family folder
- [STEP 3] You can delete anything in the document. However, I would delete the Autodesk Logo, a line below, and the website information.
- [STEP 4] You can add lines by clicking [Line] from the [Create] tab
- [STEP 5] You can move lines and text box by clicking the elements that you want to move and move (MO) command
- [STEP 6] You can edit lines and text box size as well
- [STEP 7] You can insert images or CAD files by clicking Image or Import CAD from the Insert tab
- [STEP 8] Once you complete your titleblock, you must save and click [Load into Project]
- [STEP 9] After you load the titleblock into your project, you must change the titleblock type to what you made.

For Create Inset View Manage Add-Im M Maddy The Date Law The Add-Im Add	waty O.	Timport Image Import PDF Image mages Family Types Family Co	todek Leef as terr Group	nto d Clore	
Select + Link Proyones X Family Tire Books Other Rotate with component		ingo - L A101-Pico Pier ; Level 1 Level 1	Affon Làray Kito (Làray	*	Project Source
Presented Info	Cargy adde	Client Name Project Name		Sheet Name Sheet Name User view 1800 D User V 2000 Const to Const	

(CO 6) Insert Plan views and symbols – North arrow and graphic scale

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=100

Insert plans

- [STEP 1] Open a sheet [A101-Floor Plan-Level 1] to insert a plan
- [STEP 2] Find the view on your project browser to insert, drag and drop the view to the sheet
- [STEP 3] To fit into the Titleblock, you must change your drawing scale. You can double click and change the scale, or you can change the scale from the Properties palette



[STEP 4] Move the view to be centered and change the length of the title bar to fit into the Titleblocks



Repeat this for site plan, floor plans, and ceiling plans

Insert north arrow

•

- [STEP 1] The north arrow is under Symbol from the [Annotate] tab
- [STEP 2] To add the north arrow, you will open a plan view
- [STEP 3] On the Properties palette, Orientation should be changed from Project North to True North
- [STEP 4] Click Symbol from Annotate tab
- [STEP 5] Select North Arrow 2 on the Properties palette. If you cannot find North Arrow 2, you need to load the North Arrow family from the Annotation folder
- [STEP 6] Place the North Arrow 2 on your plan view



- [STEP 7] Change Orientation again from Ture North to Project North
- [STEP 8] Move the north arrow to the corner of your plan



Repeat this for site plan, floor plans, and ceiling plans

SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

Autodesk.Help. (2018, May 16). Revit Families. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/</u> <u>support/revit-products/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2016/ENU/Revit-Model/files/GUID-4EBB97AD-</u> <u>C7B6-4828-91EB-BC0E99B81E43-htm.html</u>

Chapter 15. Add/edit model-in-place components & edit family



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Add/Edit Furniture families (CO 2) Add/Edit Model-in-place components – Custom casework (CO 3) Add/Edit a New Family – Furniture



At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Decture Contents

(CO I) Add/Edit Furniture families

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=102

For construction documents in Revit, furniture can be mainly categorized into two main areas. One is a product, which includes custom furniture and manufacture-made furniture, and the other is a contractor (carpenter) made built-in furniture or millwork.

- We typically use [PLACE COMPONENTS] a Revit family for custom furniture and manufacture-made furniture because it will be used multiple times. It includes millwork like Revit Countertop, Shelf, Cabinets, and so on.
- We typically use [MODEL-IN-PLACE] for contractor made built-in furniture or millwork because it will be used only once for the specific space only.

Revit Furniture [PLACE COMPONENTS]

- [STEP 1] Open a Floor Plan Level 1 view from Project Browser
- [STEP 2] You may change the scale of the view because we changed the drawing scale to fit on an 11in X 17 in sheet. I changed the drawing scale from 3/32" to 3/16"
- [STEP 3] Click [COMPONENTS] (CM) from [ARCHITECTURE] tab



• [STEP 4] You will find furniture (or any components-lighting fixture, plumbing, case work-sink, appliances, plants) from [Properties] palette that you want to put in the floor plan. If you do not find the furniture from the panel, you must click [LOAD FAMILY] from the [MODIFY/PLACE COMPONENT] tab and find the furniture family you want

to add from the Library folder or the websites from Session 14

- BimObject <u>https://www.bimobject.com/en-us</u>
- Revit City <u>https://www.revitcity.com/index.php</u>
- BIM Smith <u>https://market.bimsmith.com/</u>
- NBS National BIM Library <u>https://www.nationalbimlibrary.com/en/</u>
- Manufacturers' website

TIPS.

For your Floor plan, you do not need to find the exact furniture that you want to use. You may use the Revit furniture family for your floor plan as a placeholder. Do not waste time to add all objects (like books, decorative pieces for perspectives) that are not showing on your floor plan. For your perspective views and renderings, it would be better to find the most accurate Revit family file. If you cannot find the Revit family file, find the SketchUp file and use it for your rendering.

- [STEP 5] Place the furniture families on your floor plan. Make sure the Level is what you want.
- [STEP 6] Use [Space bar] on your keyboard to rotate the family.
 To move/rotate/align/copy/mirror the furniture, click the furniture that you want to move/rotate and then click
 [MOVE] (MO), [ROTATE] (RO), [align] (AL), [COPY] (CO), or [MIRROR] (MM) from [MODIFY/FURNITURE] tab
- [STEP 7] Also, you can use [ALIGNED DIMENSION] (DI) from the [ANNOTATION] tab



• Complete all furniture placement



(CO 2) Add/Edit Model-in-place components – Custom casework

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=102

Create Model in Place components (Alcove seating)

- [STEP 1] Open a Floor Plan Level 1 view from Project Browser
- [STEP 2] You may turn on the reference CAD plan/Imported image to see the size of the Alcove setting or turn on [HIDDEN ELEMENTS] if it is hidden and unhide the category



- [STEP 3] Click Component small black arrow and click [MODEL IN PLACE] from [ARCHITECTURE] tab
- [STEP 4] You will need to select the most relevant Family Category. For the Alcove Seating, [CASEWORK] is the most appropriate category. Click [OK]



• [STEP 5] make a name for the component [Alcove seating].

- [STEP 6] To draw lines/models, you must set/confirm the [WORK PLANE] first
 - Click [SET] from [CREATE] tab
 - You can select the work plane with the name or pick a plan. Make sure this will be the base plane that you work



- [STEP 6] You can make models with the Forms tool
 - For the alcove seating, click [EXTRUSION] and draw lines with the [DRAW] tool
 - The line must be closed. You may use [TRIM] (TR) to make it closed
 - Double-check the Extrusion End and Extrusion Start
 - Click the [GREEN CHECKMARK] to finish the drawing



- For the upper part, you will create the upper part in the current [MODEL-IN PLACE COMPONENT]
- If you want to try other Forms, you are welcome to try and practice.
- Use the [VOID] tool and Cut tool to subtract a form from other forms (s)
- Click Extrusion > Draw lines > make sure the extrusion End and Start > Click [GREEN CHECKMARK]
- If the model is not showing, please check on your ISO view and change the [WORK PLANE]
- Once all forms created, you will click the [GREEN CHECKMARK] to Finish Model



• Complete the casework



(CO 3) Add/Edit a New Family – Furniture

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=102

In this tutorial, I will demonstrate how to create a simple furniture family in Revit. We will use Eames Walnut Stool information from <u>https://www.hermanmiller.com/products/seating/stools/eames-walnut-stools/</u>

To create a new family file (Model it will be used multiple times)

- [STEP 1] Click [FILE] > [NEW] > [FAMILY]
- [STEP 2] Find [Furniture.rft] in the Select Template File browser and Click [OPEN]

Architecture Structure Precest Insert Annatate Analyze Massing & Site Collabor	este View Manage Add-Ins Modify (2) -	
SE Creates a Revit file.		
New D Project Se.	View Measure Crate	
Open + Creates a set of custom components to use in project.	(ent 2 G) (DS)	Project Browner - 21.Lecture-Revi
Save Conceptual Mass. Opera a tengote for creating a conceptual massing model.	Lot pr byth inpend	Floor Flans Floor Flans Level 1 Level 2 Roof
Eport +	Kutory Paradata	- Site ⊡- Caling Plani. Level 1 - Level 2
Print + Martin Status of symbol to identify elements in the aroject.	Constant. Charles Constant Con	Roof =-30 Views -30 Views 1 10 Views 7
Clase	Consult Construction Construction Construction	SO-Model ISO-Model ISO-Site ⊜ Elevations (Building Elevatic
Options Exit Rent		East Devation 1 - a
Show Hidden Lines By Discipline	Duct Duct Teents Duct Electrical	Elevation 1 - c North
Color Scheme (none)	Elbowift Transition.ift Equipment., Fixture., Fixture.ift Device Device.ift	South
Default Analysis Displa None		West
Sun Path		Sections (Building Section)
Underlay &		Section 1
Ranges Base Level None	Furniture Furniture.ft: Generic Generic Generic Generic Generic Generic Generic Generic Generic	Section 2
Range Top Level Unbounded	Systemuft Model Ad., Model Model Ta., Model Ta., Model Ta., Model Ta., Model Model re., Model re., Model re.,	En Legenos
Underlay Orientation Look down		En Scheduler Quantities (all)
Extents 2		(i) - A001 - Site Plan
Crop View M	R R LR R R R R R R	iii A101 - Floor Plan - Level 1
	Generic Generic Lighting Lighting Lighting Linear Linear Mechanical Mechanical V	18 - A102 - Floor Plan - Level 2
View Renne Ede	En anna Bernhen eft	A401 - RCP - Level 1
Associated Level 1	carDauar Lasuadou?	(i) A402 - RCP - Level 2
Scope Box None	Files of type: Family Template Files (*.rft)	⇒ 🖾 Families
Depth Clipping No clip	Teola -	n Cancel (i) Analytical Links
Identity Data R		Annotation Symbols
View Template <none></none>		To Cable Trans
View Name Level 1		II. Caste Hays
The second		III Casework

- [STEP 3] It will automatically open these four windows. Before you start, save the family file to your project folder.
- [STEP 4] I recommend you make the view tile (WT) and Zoom All (ZA) see all views. You will pick a view [REFERENCE LEVEL], or [FRONT] view depends on what you want to make.

File Create Instet Annotate View M Modify Select - Properties Form	tenage Add-Ins Modely C+- Sweep Sweet Weld, Model Component Model Com- Sweep Sweet Weld, Model Component Model Com- Text Text Text Text Text Text Text Text	Model George Control Connectors Datan	Set Show Viewer Load into Prijett Project and Close Work Pring Family Edite		
Renty functione Particle Particle Parties Part	X [: fist.lood		The View I X		 Popet Brance - Samy1 C Viewe (d) De Davis De Local De Local
	<i>धर - 10⁻ ⊡ ि वि व</i>		v ur-ser ⊠Sakas Govision < * drapt ⊡ treat ⊡ treat	12 F2 Ver 1	
Properties help Annual Click to select, TAB for alternates, CTPL adds, SHIFT u	ưở = የ수* □ 중 48 49 19 55 < reelects		> nz-re ⊡ख≉≉Ala≣ <		

- [STEP 5] To draw the stool, you will use [REVOLVE] to draw this stool
- [STEP 6] Before you draw a revolving line, you will need [REFERENCE PLANES] to know the Height and Width. Click [REFERENCE PLANE] from the [CREATE] tab
- [STEP 7] Draw height left, and right reference plane and dimension it Dimension information from <u>this page</u>



- [STEP 8] On [FRONT] view, Click [REVOLVE] from the [CREATE] tab
- [STEP 9] Draw lines for the Profile (Boundary). The lines are to be closed



- [STEP 10] Select [AXIS LINE] and pick the centerline
- [STEP 11] Click the [GREEN CHECKMARK] to finish the model



- [STEP 12] If you want to add/subtract any model, you can create it in this model
- [STEP 13] Once all your model works are done, save the family file on your project folder.
- [STEP 14] Click [LOAD INTO PROJECT] to your project.



Note. Use Sketchup Model in Revit

Importing SketchUp Files into Revit Tutorial

If you want your Sketchup file in multiple-use, you should make it as a family file.

Sketchup material will not be followed and merged as one material, but I will demonstrate some tips in the next session. Refer to this video

Revit Architecture | Convert SketchUp Models Into Revit(With Materials)

SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

Autodesk.Help. (2018, May 16). Revit Families. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/</u> <u>support/revit-products/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2016/ENU/Revit-Model/files/GUID-4EBB97AD-</u> <u>C7B6-4828-91EB-BC0E99B81E43-htm.html</u>

Eames Walnut Stools. (n.d.). Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://www.hermanmiller.com/products/seating/stools/</u> <u>eames-walnut-stools/</u>

DWR. (2019, June 12). Eames Walnut Stool. Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://www.dwr.com/bedroom-bedside-tables/eames-walnut-stool/237.html?lang=en_US</u>

Balkan Architect. (2018, April 12). Importing SketchUp Files into Revit Tutorial. Retrieved October 23, 2020, from https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4VFK-KEOMZc

M.T.H Revit Tutorials. (2018, May 4). Convert SketchUp Models Into Revit (with Materials). Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=k_1g3077jxl</u>

Chapter 16. Add/edit elevation, section, detail, text, annotation, & rooms



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Add/Edit Elevations & Sections - Adjust crop region

(CO 2) Add/Edit Detail views

(CO 3) Add Texts & Annotations

(CO 4) Add/Edit Rooms, Room tags, Room separators

(CO 5) Add/Edit a color fill scheme



At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



ELecture Contents

(CO I) Add/Edit Elevations & Sections – Adjust crop region

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=104

You can create sections or elevations in any floor plans.

To add an interior elevation

- [STEP 1] Open the project, and open [Level 1] floor plan
- [STEP 2] Click [Elevation] from [View] tab, under [Create] panel
- [STEP 3] Click the [Properties] palette > select Interior Elevation, the symbol will be updated.
- [STEP 4] Hover over your plan. You will notice the elevation marker will "snap" parallel to walls. Please select the location where you want to place your elevation and click to set it in place. Press [Esc] to complete the command
- [STEP 5] Select the elevation tag. You can create additional elevations from one elevation symbol. Press [Esc] to complete the command



• [STEP 6] Select the elevation arrow (black filled) to adjust the crop region and view depth by moving the blue line; you can adjust where the elevation view begins. By adjusting the blue nodes on the line, you can define the crop region. Moreover, by moving the arrows, you can adjust the view depth of the elevation.



- [STEP 7] Once your elevation is defined, double click on the arrow of the elevation symbol > the newly created elevation view will be open. You may realize the current view is not what you want to present. If the view shows right, please skip [STEP 8] and [STEP 9]
- [STEP 8]Click the edge of the elevation > click [Edit Crop]



• [STEP 9] Redraw the boundary of the elevation. The boundary must be a closed-loop > Click [Green check-mark] to finish the crop boundary.



• [STEP 10] Make sure you check all three [Crop view], [Crop Region Visible], and [Annotation Crop] on [Properties] palette.

Note. The solid blue defines the visible region, and the dashed line defines where your annotations can be viewed and placed. Additionally, you can continue to adjust their view ranges by clicking on the nodes.



[STEP 11] Add a sheet for the elevation by mouse right-clicking and clicking [New Sheet] on Sheets(all) from [Project Browser] > Select 11×17 titleblock page that you created > Rename the sheet – Sheet number [A601], Sheet name – Interior Elevation > Once the empty sheet is open > Drag the elevation view from [Project Browser] to the sheet > Rename the view title [E-LIVING-N] > Then you can see the elevation symbol name and view name updated on the floor plan



[STEP 12] Usually, we want to show the boundary of elevation in a bold line. On your sheet, add [Detail Line] from
[Annotation] tab, under [Detail] panel, or type [DL] > Select [Wide Lines] from [Modify] tab, under [Line Styles] > Trace
the boundary lines



To add a section view

- [STEP 1] You will use similar steps to create section views
- [STEP 2] Click [Section] from [View] tab, under [Create] panel
- [STEP 3] Draw a section line by clicking two points, then you can change the view direction and boundary of the view



• [STEP 4] Set a sheet for the section

Fie Architecture	Structure Precast Insert	Annotate Analyze Massing & Site	Collaborate View Manage Ad	id-Ins Modify () +							
Modify Select +	Visibility/ Filters Thin Si Graphics Unes Hidd Graphics	Now Remove Rem Ince Hidden Lines Piece No. Preser	der Render soud Gatery tation	Pian Views Create	Legend	Schedules when Sheet	View Title Revisions G Block Sheet Compo	And Carl Matching And Carl Matc	Switch Windows Interface View Windows	Tale Un s Views Inte ws	er . frace
Properties		X 🗈 A101 - Floor Plan - Level 1 X			= 15	A301 - Interior Section				₩ Pr	oject Browser - Earnes_House 🗙
Sheet										0.	(D) Views (All) III - Floor Plans Level 1
Shee Biok Pain-Level Graphics Vability/Graphics Over Sole General Quart Dependency Referencing Data Dependency Carrent Revision Data Carrent Revision Data Data National Data National Data Data National Data National	1 → Dig Set typ teta teta	Contraction of the second seco	Graphic Communication for Rend Fright				D O O O O				Roof Ste Ste Comparison Step Step Step Step Step Step Step Step
										5	Ason - memory section Adon - Interior Deviation Families Groups Pand Links

(CO 2) Add/Edit Detail views

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=104

Add detailed views

• [STEP 1] Click [Callout] from [View] tab, under [Create] panel

• [STEP 2] Draw the boundary of a view on your floor plan > then [Level 2-Callout] will be automatically created under [Floor plans] > Rename the view to [Level 2 – Restrooms] > If needed, update the scale



• [STEP 3] Create an elevation view and a section view on the detail view > add details > Update scales > Hide [elevation symbol] on [Level 2] floor plan > Hide [Section symbol] on [Level 2 – Restrooms] detail view and [Level 2] floor plan



• [STEP 4] Add the detail views to the sheet [A701-Restroom 1]



(CO 3) Add Texts & Annotations

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=104

Annotation (Texts, Notes, and Dimensions) can be added to any views and sheets

In this tutorial, you will practice the [TEXT] tool to add texts and notes

• [STEP 1] Open a [view] from [sheet] by double-clicking the view > On the view, click [Text] from [Annotate] tab, under [Text] panel > Select a text type from [Properties] panel > Drag and drop to make a text box > Add text



Note. If you need a different style of text type, you can duplicate the type and edit



 [STEP 2] Add a leader line(s) by clicking the [Leader] icon from the [Modify] tab > adjust arrow direction and the leader line



(CO 4) Add/Edit Rooms, Room tags, Room separators

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=104

Another useful annotation tool is creating, defining, and tagging rooms in Revit. Once you have walls, Revit recognizes the walls as the boundary of the rooms. However, if you have unclear boundaries, you have to define room boundary by using [Room Separator] first

Confirm room boundaries

- [STEP 1] Click [Room] from [Architecture] tab, under [Room & Area] panel
- [STEP 2] Hover the mouse over the floor plan to find a closed room. You can confirm the boundaries by clicking [Highlight Boundaries]



• [STEP 3] Click [Close] to hide the highlighted boundaries

Define boundaries

- [STEP 1] To define boundaries, click [Room Separator] from [Architecture] tab, under [Room & Area] panel



Create rooms

- [STEP 1] Click [Room] from [Architecture] tab, under [Room & Area] panel
- [STEP 2] Hover over each room and click once with the mouse to define the room boundary. You will see a tag that reads [ROOM] and a [X] showing the extent of the room. Continue for each room.



Edit tags

- [STEP 1] Click a room tag (NAME) two times, then you can edit the room name. Click a room tag (NUMBER) two times. Then you can edit the room number.
 Note. If the rooms are located on the 1st floor, the number starts from 101. If the rooms are located on the 2nd floor, the number starts from 201.
- [STEP 2] Move the room tags outside of the room to avoid overlapping with model lines and the room names > Select all room tags > Check [Leader Line] box > Move the room tags to the outside of the room



(CO 5) Add/Edit a color fill scheme

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=104

You can use the [color fill legend] to place rooms and spaces after adding rooms. Color coding plans can help the client understand the relationship between public and private, work, and rest spaces.

Add a color fill legend

• [STEP 1] Click a [room] on a floor plan > Add [PUBLIC], [SEMI-PRIVATE], or [PRIVATE] on [Department] from [Properties] palette > If you already added one of the three options, you can select from the drop-down menu.



- [STEP 2] Repeat step 1 for all rooms
- [STEP 3] Duplicate floor plans for only the color-filled plans by right-clicking a view > select [Duplicate view] > select [Duplicate with Detailing] > Rename the copied views



 [STEP 4] Open the duplicated views > Click [Color Fill Legend] from [Annotate] tab, under [Color Fill] panel > Click on a floor plan, then [Choose Space Type and Color Scheme] window will open > Confirm Space type: Room, Color Scheme: Department > Click [OK] then the color-filled legend and color will show.



• [STEP 5] Repeat this step 4 for another plan



• [STEP 6] To update color, Click the legend > click [Edit Scheme] > Define color> Click [OK] to finish color scheme



SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

Chapter 17. Add/edit views, lighting, & materials



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Set perspective views
(CO 2) Set Isometric views
(CO 3) Edit Views – Graphic Display styles
(CO 4) Test Render
(CO 5) Set sun
(CO 6) Edit Artificial lighting
(CO 7) Add/Edit materials
(CO 8) Render material managements



At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



ELecture Contents

(CO I) Set perspective views

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=106

Revit supports perspective views and isometric views.

For more information about 3D views, please read this page

To create a camera view for a perspective view

- [STEP 1] Open a floor plan [Level 1] to create a camera view
- [STEP 2] Click a drop down menu of [3D view] > [Camera view] from the [View] tab, under [Create] panel
- [STEP 3] On the floor plan, click the location of the camera position, click the target position > The perspective view will pop up the window.



To reposition the camera view

- [STEP 1] In order to adjust the view, you will open the camera view that you would like to adjust and the floor plan together. Type (WT) to see the tile view and type (ZA) to see zoom in all
- [STEP 2] Click the frame of the perspective view > you can reposition by controlling the 3D wheel on the top-right corner of the view and resize the camera view by adjusting the nodes
- [STEP 3] You can also change the camera position and the target position on your floor plan. On the Properties panel, change eye elevation & Target elevation, turn off Far Clip Active, and view the name.



Image-print size update for the perspective view

- [STEP 1] Click the view frame
- [STEP 2] Click the [Size Crop] icon from the [Modify] tab
- [STEP 3] On Crop Region Size window, check [Scale (locked proportions)]
- [STEP 4] Change the width of what you want to make, and then the height will automatically change with the view ratio you made.
- [STEP 5] If you want to change the proportion, you check the [Field of view] and change the proportion. Click Apply.



- [STEP 6] Then again, check [Scale] to change the size of the view
- [STEP 7] Click [ok] to finish

(CO 2) Set Isometric views

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=106

Set Isometric view

• [STEP 1] To add an Isometric view, Click the drop-down menu of [3D view] from the [view] tab, under [Create] panel, click [Default 3D view] > The Isometric view will pop up



- [STEP 2] To edit the boundary of the view, Click the [section box] option on the [properties] palette
- [STEP 3] Click the [section box] on the view > Drag the arrows toward the model to create a dynamic slice of the model



(CO 3) Edit Views – Graphic Display styles

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=106

To set the graphic display styles

• Once you click [Graphic Display] on the [view navigation] panel, click one of the six options, then you can change the styles of graphic



• Examples of the six graphic style preset



Realistic & Custom

To modify Graphic Display Options

- [STEP 1] Click [Graphic Display] on the [view navigation] panel > click [Graphic Display Options]
- [STEP 2] Modify the properties that are appropriate for your project For a quick presentation, I like to use these settings



• [STEP 3] Click [Apply] to confirm what you changed, click [Ok] to set the style

(CO 4) Test Render

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=106

To do a test render, you need to adjust the render settings

- [STEP 1] Click [Render] from the [View] tab, under [Presentation] or Click [Rendering Dialog] on the [view navigation] panel
- [STEP 2] Adjust settings
 - Confirm Setting Draft for a test render
 - Change Lighting scheme interior for an interior scene
 - Change Sun Setting Sun and Artificial
 - Change Background style
 - Click [adjust Exposure] if needed


• [STEP 3] Click Render to see the result. You can stop if it shows all right, you do not need to wait until the completion.

(CO 5) Set sun

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=106

Setting Sun

- [STEP 1] Click [Sun Path] On > Click [Shadow] On
- [STEP 2] Click Sun Settings to adjust sun direction
- [STEP 3] Select Still for a specific time
- [STEP 4] Change Display setting to Realistic or Render to see the sun direction and material



(CO 6) Edit Artificial lighting

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=106

Review the default lighting setting

• [STEP 1] To see an accurate lighting setting, change the render setting to [Interior: Artificial only] and [High] quality



- [STEP 2] Open Visibility/Graphics Overrides, or type [VV] for 3D view
- [STEP 3] Turn on Lighting Source to see the light source

Categories Annotation Catego	vier Analytical I								Project Browser - Eames Pa
how model categories in this view	and the second sec	and a feature of the last							- "re" Menus (all)
how model categories in this view	nes viavisa	nooe Categories	anported Categor	ies rises				<u> </u>	in Floor Plans
an entre mode an entre state	W			If a cabegory	is unchecked,	it will not be visib			Level 1
rlist; <multpie> v</multpie>									Level 1 - Colo
Visibility	1	Projection/Surfac	•	Cut	Halftone	Detail	1 101		Level 2 - Colo
	Lines	Patterns	Transparency	Lines Patterns		CRASH.			Level 2 - Rest
Detail Items						By View			Roof
M Doors					14	By View			Site
M Duct Accessories					0	By View		- 63	Ceiling Plans
Duct Hittings			_		10	By View			Level 1
Duct Insulations			_			By View		8	Level 2
Duct Linings			-		11	By View			Roof
Duct Placeholders						By View		B	E 3D Views
Ducts		a construction of the				ByView		+	ISO-view-01
Electrical Equipment						By View			ISO-view-02
C Deconcal Postures					10	by view		~	Perspective
Entourage						By View			Elevations (Build
Ber Durch						Bullion			East
Plex Diner					- 71	Ry View			North
Electrices		_	-		1 11	Bullion			South
V Euroture			-		1	ByView			West .
Fumiliare Sustems					11	By View		100	E- Elevations (Interv
Ceneric Models					0	ByView			E.Bastanam 1
Lighting Devices		and the second second	-	And in case of the local data was not as	0	By View			CARGAN Ruildia
Lighting Fatures	Y				17	By View			C.Rastroom
K <hidden lines=""></hidden>									SECTION A-
- M Light Source)								Will Legends
PIL Graphics									Schedules/Quant
PIL Lighting Futu									E Sheets (all)
E Lines					1	By View			R A100 - Site Plan
Mess						By View			a A101 - Floor Pla
Mechanical Equipment						By View			E A101-C - Color f
MEP Fabrication Cont						By View			a A102 - Floor Pla
MEP Fabrication Duct						By View			H A102-C - Color f
MEP Fabrication Han					0	By View			8 - A401 - RCP - Le
MEP Fabrication Pipe					- 13	By View			A402 - RCP - Le
M Nurse Call Devices		a sile or	A	And the second	10	By View			AS01 - Interior S
Al None	Invert	Espand	AB	Override Host Layers		_			A601 - Interior E
				Chost the states		(CDM			E ATO1 - Restroom
									E Families

Lighting setting

- [STEP 1] Click the lighting fixture that you want to modify
- [STEP 2] Click Edit Type > Click Duplicate and name the new type
- [STEP 3] Modify Photometrics [initial intensity] > I recommend to adjust the value of [Illuminance] and [at a distance of]

Please refer to this page for the recommended lighting level (Lux) for activities Repeat this step for all other lighting

sources



• [STEP 4] Test render to see if the light fixtures are at the right setting.



- Recessed indirect lighting
 - <u>Recessed Ceiling with Light in Revit * Light Tutorial *</u>

(CO 7) Add/Edit materials

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=106

Apply materials in Family type

- [STEP 1] Click an object that you want to add or change materials
- [STEP 2] Click [Edit Type] to change Materials and Finishes
- [STEP 3] Duplicate if needed
- [STEP 4] Click Material Value (Not all objects have this option, but many family files do this option) to add or modify the material. Then Material Browser will pop up



- [STEP 5] If you already made a material you want to use, please select the material and click ok to finish
- [STEP 6] If you want to make a new material, click Create New Material
- [STEP 7] Mouse right-click and click to [Rename] the new material [Ex. 000-FB-01-White]

percet Percetta Percetta Percetta Percett	Moves With Nearby Eleme	ts.						
Description Tender Tender <th>ties</th> <th>El tarrel 😡 Pertyactore Malon</th> <th>an × El la G</th> <th>amen-12 E</th> <th>8 - BI</th> <th>-1</th> <th></th> <th>₽ Project Browser - Larmer</th>	ties	El tarrel 😡 Pertyactore Malon	an × El la G	amen-12 E	8 - BI	-1		₽ Project Browser - Larmer
Defail Interity Interity Interity Interity Interity Interity Interity Interity Interity Interity Interity Interity Interity Interity Interity <	Earnes Lounge Chair 12464	Type Properties.		×	Matarial Bersener - Definit Nase Material(1)			1 × Poor Plans
Party: Beerg Converting Party: Beerg	Default	-						Level 1
vir. 13 vir. 13 vir. 13 vir. 14 vir. 14 vir. 14 vir. 15 vir. 14 vir. 15 vir. 14 vir. 16 <td>mene</td> <td>Family: Eames_Lounge_Chair_12464</td> <td>÷</td> <td>Load</td> <td>Search</td> <td><u>q</u> <u>B</u></td> <td>dentity Graphics Appearance +</td> <td>Level 1 - Col</td>	mene	Family: Eames_Lounge_Chair_12464	÷	Load	Search	<u>q</u> <u>B</u>	dentity Graphics Appearance +	Level 1 - Col
anti- tor for la del 1/2 - tor for la del	ure (1) ~ (1) Edit Typ	Type: Default	~	Duplicate	Project Materials: All T -	(E · *	* Shading	Level 2 - Co
Barework Barework Fund Corr Foreworks Corr Presenters Corr Corr Volta Corr Corr Statistication Corr Corr Corr Corr Corr Volta Corr Corr Statistication Corr Corr Corr Corr Corr<	reints Record 1					*	😴 Use Render Appearance	Level 2 - Re
Type Parameters Type Parameters Source (A)	tion from Level 0, 0.1/2"			Rename	Name		Color Mithada and	Roof
Item No. 0 0 1 <	Floor: 000 TL 02	Type Parameters			000_CPT_05		Cost Management	Site
at With Name Control of a Contr	t from Host 0' 0"	Parameter	Value	= ^	-		Thansparency 2	Seling Plans
y Data v A A A A A A A A A A	is With Nearby Ele	Constraints			000 Earth		Surface Pattern	Level 1
Control Control Control Control Control Partice Partice Partice Partice	y Data	E Default Elevation	or or					Level 2 Boof
Starting Start Manual Latiture Eack Start Manual Latiture Eack Start Manual Heams Mine Heams Mine Heams Mine Fatters Control Start Manual Heams Mine Heams Mine Heams Mine Fatters Control Start Manual Heams Mine Heams Mine Fatters Control Start Manual Heams Mine Fatters Control Start Manual Heams Mine Fatters Control Manual Casters 323 Smoked Oak OB Image: Starting Control Alignment Type Image Starting Control Image: Starting Control Image: Starting Control Model Model Model Image: Starting Control Image: Starting Control Manual Control Manual Control Image: Starting Control Image: Starting Control UB Decordson Image: Starting Control Image: Starting Control Image: Starting Control UB Decordson Image: Starting Control Image: Starting Control Image: Starting Control UB Decordson Image: Starting Control Image: Starting Control Image: Starting Control UB Decordson Image: Starting Control Image: Starting Control Image: Starting Control	e	Materials and Finishes		.2	000_F8_01		* Foreground	BD Views
Sex Mariel Heman Miller-Fine() [7]-4 slipy Codadi Hem Controction Domolished Heman Miller	ments	Seat Material	Leather - filack				Pattern (none)	ISO-view-01
Control Mee: Control:Control Mee: Control:C	0	Base Material	Herman Miller - Finish L7 H-alloy	12	000 FB 01-White			ISO-view-07
Bore More Alignment Trys Invest Type Invest Important Important Important Investig <	Created New Construction	Wood Backing	Steelcase - 3233 Smoked Oak Oil				Color RGB 120 120 120	Perspective
Type Image Kaynore Kaynore Model Model Image: Comparison of the sector o	e Demolished None	Identity Data	and the second se	8	000 Glass		Alignment Texture Algoment	Bevations (Build
Layore Two of the second se		TypeImage						East
Namburgiturer Partiner Code Type Comments Image: Comments Image: Code Uot Image: Code Image: Code Description Image: Code Image: Code Code Image: Code Image: Code Code Image: Code Image: Code Assembly Description Image: Code Image: Code Types Mark Image: Code Image: Code Image: Code Market Image: Code Image: Code		Keynote			000 Gunum Wall Board		▼ Background	South
1 ppe Contracted: 000,MT, Elack_01 Color 668 E00 To 1 to 0 Decorption 000,Steel ASTM A992, Elack ✓ Color Pattern ✓ Cetter Color Material Libraries ✓ ✓ Color Pattern Type Mark Color ① ① ① ① Conscillant function ○ ○ ○ ○ ●		Manufacturer					Pattern (none)	West
1/8 Color Color Color Color Color Decorption Decorption Decorption Color Color Cont Color Color Color Color Assembly Decorption Material Libraries V Color Pattern Material Libraries Type Mark Dim Class Markine Pattern Control		Type Comments			AND ALT BLOCK DI			Elevations (Inter
Description Assembly Code Image: Code Im		URL		5			Color RGB 120 120 120	E-LIVING-N
Assembly Code Cest Assembly Decorption Type Mark Directions Stantient		Description			CO DOD Start ASTA AGED Black			E-Restroom
Ced AssemblyDecorption Type Mark DimoClass Marketen		Assembly Code		1			Cutrattern	Sections (Build)
Type Mada OmnClass Numben		Cost			Material Libraries	~	▼ Foreground	S-Restroom
Typesame OrnaClass Mantee		Assembly Description			B. CO H	11	Data (mana)	apacify
		OmniClass Number					Fatten Cabines	chedules/Quar
tá OK Cancel Apply tv					ES		OK	Cancel Apply heets (all)
What do these second test do!		 What do these properties do? 			200			\$100 - Ste Plar

- [STEP 8] You can change Identity, Graphics, and Appearance. To add material from Revit Library, click Appearance, Click [Replace] this Asset. Asset Browser will pop up
- [STEP 9] Search a material from Appearance Library
- [STEP 10] Click a replace icon

File Architecture St	noture Percait Inset Annotat Communication Common shoard Geometry Moves With Nearby Elements	e Analyze Massing & Site Ce H O H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H	backate View Manage Add-Ins Mon	Sify Furniture	0. 5 - 1 0 -		• Project Brouder - Family Ho
Earnes_Lourige	Asset Browser			1 × 1	Malana (Insuran - Default New Material(1)		a × iews (all) Noor Plans Level T
Furniture (1) Constraints	Appearance Library: Fabric: Leather Document Assets	Arrist Name	a baset Base Cotoner	12 ·	Search Project Materialic All Y •	Identity Graphics Appearance +	Level 1 - Color M Level 2 Level 2 - Color M
Level Elevation from Level Elevation from Level Elevation from Level Elevation from Host Elevation Host Elevati	Autodesk Physical Assets	Leather - Matte (Blue)	Appe Opeque Febric Leather		Name 000_CPT_05		Roof Site Delling Plans
Moves With Nearby Ele [fentity Data image Comments	The Ceramic The Concrete The Date of The Fabric	Leather - Matte (Dark Grey)	Appe Opaque Fabric Leather Appe Opaque Fabric Leather		000_Earth	 Information 	Level 2 Roof ID Views
Mark hasing Phase Created I Phase Demolished I	Fiz Leather	Leather - Matte (Red)	Appe_ Opaque Fabric Leather	_	000_FB_01-White	Color RIGB 80 80 80 Image	SO-view-01 SO-view-02 Perspective-LA Bevations (Building
	Liquid Masonay Metal Metal Metallic Paint	Leather - Matte (Tan)	Appe Opaque Fabric Leather Appe Opaque Fabric Leather	()	000_Gypsum Wall Board	(no image selected) Image Fade	100 East North South West
	Minor Miscellaneous Miscellaneous	Leather - Matte (Velicw)	Appe Opaque Fabric Leather		000_MT_Black_D1	Glostiness Highlights Non-Metallic	50 • Bevations (Interior E-LIVING-N E-Restroom 1 •
	Roofing Siding Sitework Stework	Leather - Perforated (Black)	Appe Opaque Fabric: Leather Appe Opaque Fabric: Leather		Material Libraries	Reflectivity Tramparency Cutouts	S-Restroom 1 - SECTION A-A* egends
	Surre.			-	B	×	Cancel Apply heets (all) Apply heets (all) Attol - Floor Plan
		<preview Serve so Project</preview 	OK Cancel	Apple			A101 - C Color file A102 - Floor Plan A102 - C Color file A102 - C Color file A01 - RCP - Level

- [STEP 11] Click Information, name change if this is a unique material
- [STEP 10] Click ok to apply

Painting materials (For Walls, Floors, and Ceilings)

- [STEP 1] To use [Paint] tool, click [Paint] from the [Modify] tab
- [STEP 2] Click a material that you want to use from Material Browser. If you do not find the material that you want to use in the Material Browser, you must add a new material first and then apply the paint tool
- [STEP 3] Click a face that you want to change, use the Tab key to select right face



• [STEP 4] You also can remove the paint material by using the Remove Paint tool



- [STEP 5] Use [Split Face] (If the surface needs to be separated), Click [Split Face] from [Modify] tab
- [STEP 6] Click the elements (Wall, Floor, Ceiling) you want to split face. You may need to use the TAB key to select the elements
- [STEP 7] Draw a closed line to divide the surface. You may need to open an elevation view, a floor plan, or a ceiling plan to draw the lines.



- [STEP 8] Click Green checkmark to finish
- [STEP 9] Then use the Paint tool to apply the material



Decal (Flat Surface – Carpet or pictures)

- [STEP 1] To create Decal, click Decal Types from the Insert tab
- [STEP 2] Please create a new Decal, Name it, insert the image, and click ok

File Architecture	Structure Precast II CAD Link Div CAD Topography Mar	Nert Annote	e Analyze Marsing	& Site Collaborate	View Manage Add-Im Mo t Load Get Auto- Family Contes Ingort Load	dify -				
Properties 30 View. 30 View. Perspective-Livie Graphics	ng-01 ~ (1) Edit	Decal Types	\$1 @ Pers	pective-Living-01 X	Level 1			./	* *	Project Browser - Earnes, House,
Unprincs Detail Level Parts Visibility Visibility/Visibility/Orsphics Over. Graphic Display Options Discipline Default Analysis Display Sun Path Entents Crop Region Visible Far Clip Active Far Clip Active Far Clip Offsat Scope Box Excession Box	Fine Show Original Edit Architectural None S S 10 187/256" None				Decal Types Decal Types in Project Drive Sind Vierds D00-ART-01 D00-ART-02 D00-ART-03 D00-ART-04 D00-ART-04 D00-ART-05 D00-ART-04	q	Settings Source Develo Aug Bu Brightness 1 0 Reflectivey 01 0	-cet 2400, 2706, 90 pp	. A. F. D.	Level 2 - Restbooms Root - Site - Celling Plans - Level 1 - Roof - BO Views - Stoview-01 - Stoview-02 - Perspective-Liking-01 - Betantion Studieg Gleaston East - Rooth
Camera Rendering Settings Locked Orientation Projection Mode Eye Elevation Target Beaution Camera Position View Template View Name Degendancy Tate on Sheet Posaing Phase Filter Phase	Ed. Farpective 5: 0° 5: 0°	8			b b e b	2 11 88	Luminor iddi "21 Kit Aur v Luminor iddi "21 Kit Aur v Barp Paten i Inagella v Souce Benth Rig-	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		South Bentions (Interfor Bevelon) F-EUNDAN Sections (Interfor Bevelon) F-EUNDAN Sections (Interfor Bevelon) Sections (Interformation) Sections (Interformation) Sections (Interformation) Section (I
						2	1			B A501 - Interior Section A601 - Interior Elevation B A701 - Restroom 1

- [STEP 3] To place a Decal, Click Place Decal from the insert tab
- [STEP 4] Place on a surface
- [STEP 5] Change size and location from views



(CO 8) Render material managements

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=106

Manage material

- [STEP 1] Click [Materials] from [Manage] tab
- [STEP 2] In this [Material Browser], you can add and modify materials

File	Architectu	re Str	ucture	Precast	Insert	Annotate	Analyze	Massing & Site	Collaborate	View	Manage	Add-Ins	Modify	•			
G Modify	() Materials	Object Styles	N Snaps	Project Information	Project	Shared ers Parameter	Globa ers Paramet	Transfer ers Project Standar	Purge I rds Unused	0. Project Units	Structural Settings	Additional Settings	Location	Coordinates	Position	Design Options	Add to Set
Select +		-					Settin	35						Project Locatio	n		Design Options
Propertie	5				×	E Level 1	-	Perspective-1	iving-01 ×	TH Lev	rel 1	150-	view-02				
P	3D Viev	v			+												

• [STEP 3] If you need to apply an imported object (CAD or Sketchup), use [Object Styles]

SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

Autodesk.Help. (2019, November 17). 3D Views. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from <u>https://knowledge.autodesk.com/</u> support/revit-products/learn-explore/caas/CloudHelp/cloudhelp/2020/ENU/Revit-DocumentPresent/files/GUID-B3354433-8ED8-4DA7-8078-C2514195BEB5-htm.html

Airfal. (2014, January 15). Recommended light levels for common types of working activities. Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://www.airfal.com/en/industrial-lighting/recommended-light-levels-common-types-of-working-activities-2875/</u>

Balkan Architect. (2018, January 3). Recessed Ceiling with Light in Revit * Light Tutorial*. Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4VFK-KEOMZc</u>

Chapter 18. Create Revit rendering, Revit clouding rendering



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Insert other types of files - Sketchup, AutoCAD

- (CO 2) Advanced render settings
- (CO 3) Edit render qualities
- (CO 4) Understand and make cloud renderings
- (CO 5) Save Rendering outputs



At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Lecture Contents

(CO I) Insert other types of files – Sketchup, AutoCAD

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=108

Although many manufactures provide Revit Family and Revit also provide numerous libraries, designers always seek new models and objects for their design and renderings. Sketchup 3D Warehouse provides a great library from designers and manufacturers. I added three Video tutorials to import the Sketchup model to Revit Family for your reference. You may try.

- Sketchup Model to Revit
 <u>Importing SketchUp Files into Revit Tutorial</u>
- Sketchup Model to Revit Material changes
 <u>Revit Architecture | Convert SketchUp Models Into Revit(With Materials)</u>
- Complex 3D max Model to Revit Hide the complex model lines in Revit (Super advanced level)
 <u>AMAZING REVIT 1 FROM 3DS MAX TO REVIT WITHOUT VIEWING TRIANGLES EDGES</u>

Sketchup model to Revit with updating material changes

- [STEP 1] Sketchup Model to DXF file
 - Open the Sketchup model in Sketchup, or your download the furniture model from a 3D warehouse. In this process, you may need Sketchup Pro.
 - Create layers by material. If you have 3 materials, create 3 layers with unique names (e.g. 000_Chair_sk_seat_01, 000_Chair_sk_leg_01, 000_Chair_sk_base_01)
 - The entire model until there is nothing left to explode.



Modeling credit: Vojislav N. downloaded from 3D warehouse



• Select one material > Mouse right click and Select > All with the same material

Modeling credit: Vojislav N. downloaded from 3D warehouse

- Eine ficht Kimm 0 8 9 0 4444444 A ---8 1 A A A A A A . 1. STHANS and have -- 🕵 ÷ 0000 0 6 3 10 0 18 9 999 2 4 1 10 18 4 18 100 ** 00 2 2 1 IAI * 4 * # # # # # * NN 20 ack_01 11 ->
- Change layer in [Entity Info] Tray by selecting the desired layer that you previously made

() () () Select objects. Shift to extend select. Drag mouse to select multiple.

Modeling credit: Vojislav N. downloaded from 3D warehouse

- Do the same procedure (material selection and layer change) for the other materials
- Export > 3D model > Select DXF file > Click option > Select only Faces > Version 2007 > OK > Export

					Diduat Tay - Entry ido No Selection
4 ↑ - + 105-15U > 02-Rese	arch > 202015U-mini-grant > 002,Reve	-> 18, Revie, 11	Y 0 1	and II dest 11 p	
Organize • New Yolder Quick access Crastive Cloud Files	Name Did Screenshots	Status Date modifier Image: Comparison of the state of the	Type 13 AM File loider IPM File fulder	kee O	• Meterisk
CreDrive - Jows State University T05-ISU ECT Previous This PC	AutoCAD Export	Options X		/	Selet ESE
Destop Documents Docurloads Docurloads Docurloads Docurloads	IF Edges IF Edges IF Construction IF Determines IF Text	Geometry			Components Styles Sudemi Scores
Eis name 200 Chair de 01 def		OKCancel			Instructor Soften Edges Leyes One Name
Save as type: AuroCAD DXF File ("di			Options_	Export Cancel	● Layer0 ○ 000_Char_sk_back_01 ○ 000_Char_sk_yeak_02

Modeling credit: Vojislav N. downloaded from 3D warehouse

- [STEP 2] DXF file Properties change
 - Open AutoCAD
 - Open the DXF file in AutoCAD. It will show in a 3D view
 - Select all lines by pressing [Ctrl+A]
 - Change Object color from [Home] tab > Color [By Layer]
 - Save the DXF file with Version 2007



- [STEP 3] Import DWF file (Furniture) to Revit
 - File > New > Family > Select Family Template file (Furniture)
 - Insert tab > Import CAD > Change files of type to DXF > Select the file > Click [Open] > Save the family file > Load

into Project

<pre>precision function in the interview of the interview</pre>	Properties .	El-1 en S		Project Browser - Family1 Of News (all) Control - Ref. Level Control Family
No. Review Source: Source: <th>Farely Eventure Control of Contro</th> <th></th> <th>R Imped CAD Formula Look In R Ref Lat. Look In R Ref Lat. R R</th> <th> ■ Ref. Levil ■ Bandon (Bruston Bandon (Bruston Bandon (Bruston Bandon <</th>	Farely Eventure Control of Contro		R Imped CAD Formula Look In R Ref Lat. Look In R Ref Lat. R R	 ■ Ref. Levil ■ Bandon (Bruston Bandon (Bruston Bandon (Bruston Bandon <
			Comet view priv Person on the formation of the formatio	

- [STEP 4] Change materials for an imported file in the Revit project file
 - Manage tab > Object Style
 - Click Imported objects
 - Change material by clicking the material slot

30 Ver								_			tot standard	met man
0				Model Objects Annotation Objects	Analytical Model	Objects (mported	Objects			×	⇒ Floor Plans ⇒ Floor Plans – Level 1 – Level 1	Color Fill
D View: Perspective-Livin raphics Detail Level	g-01 - Edit Type			Category	Line Weight	Line Color	Line Pattern	Material		10 157	Level 2 Level 2 Level 2	Color Fill Restroom
Parts Visibility	Show Original	ET (4111	Category	Projection	Line Color	Long P plants	reastan		and the second second	Roof	
sibility/Graphics Over-	Edt.	「「「」 作用子」	+++++	Imports in Families	1	Black	Solid			the the second	Site	
raphic Display Options	Edit_	- for the second		(Default)	1	Black	Solid	Render Material 22			⊟ Ceiling Plan	£
iscipline	Architectural		and the second s	- 0	1	Black.	Solid	Render Material 25		Sold State of the local state of the	-Level 1	
efault Analysis Display	None	the second se		000_Chair_sk_back_01	1	Block	Solid	000 Chair sk back			Level 2	
on Path	R			000_Cheir_sk_seat_02	1	 Black 	Solid	000_Chair_sk_seat		and the second se	Roof	
ents	1	and the second se		72_VITRA_CLASSIC_D2.	. 1	Black	Pallal and de	Baudas Material St.		Particular and a second	1010-	
rop View	R			72_VITRA_CLASSIC_D2	. 1	Black	Material Browser - 000_Ch	air_sk_seat_01				~
op Region Visible	R	A COMPANY OF THE OWNER OWNER OF THE OWNER		72_VITRA_CLASSIC_D2.	. 1	Black						
Clip Active				72_VITRA_CLASSIC_D2	. 1	Black	Search		Q	Identity Graphics Appearance +		-
r Clip Offset	53" 10.187/256"			- 72_VITRA_CLASSIC_D2	. 1	Black			1	O Gamphing Stand Ballabard		Dh Ch
ope Box	None			72_VITRA_CLASSIC_03_	. 1	Black	Project Materials: All T		12 - 1	CS STRUME STOR - ADMILLER		10
ction Bow				72_VITRA_CLASSIC_D3.	. 1	Black	Name					_
mena	1			- 72_VITRA_CLASSIC_D3	. 1	Black.						
endering Settings	Edt			72_VITRA_CLASSIC_D3	. 1	Black						
ocked Orientation				72_VITRA_CLASSIC_DJ	. 1	Black	Charles legs					
rojection Mode	Perspective			72 VITRA CLASSIC DL	. 1	Black						
e Elevation	5' 0'			72_VITRA_CLASSIC_D3_		Black	Charles Stat					
arget Elevation	5.0"		1	72_VIIKA_INSEC		Black	Commission and			▶ Information		
amera Position	Explicit.		the second se	8M/LUC-11280/042		Black						
intity Data			and the second second	D20MAD		Curre	000_Char_sk_bac	K,01		* Farameters		
iew Template	<none></none>			- Uchyap	1	Cyan	121		_	Color RGB 203 203 203		
iew Name	Perspective-Living-01			Matel	1	- Diack	000_Char_sk_seat	(81		the second se	Lin .	
ependency	Independent		111 Maria	Matal Duto	1	DipCK	and a			Roughness	0.08	
tle on Sheet				Cent	1	Black	000 CPT 01			Ballef Pattern (Burna)		
tsing	1			CEAT. DODDO		Vallar				· mener i arvera isanity		
hase Filter	Show All			CEAT, EMISSI	1	Black	T N an car as			 Cutout 		
hase	New Construction		and the second se	SEAT. GLIDE	1	RGR 192.14	000"Ch1"05			Advanced Highlight Controls		
		The second states of the second	and the second second	SEATLOTHER	1	Black	-					
				SEAT, OHITER SHELL	1	EGR 192,10	000_FB_01					
		and the second second				_	tool .					
			1	Select All Select none	Turnert	_	A ADA					
		- LUBR JANDA					Material Libraries		8			
							B. O. B		11			
			100 - 201 - 201						11			
			- the LOPP Harris				THE					

(CO 2) Advanced render settings

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=108

Region renders

The Region render function saves time while rendering

- [STEP 1] Check Region on Render Setting
- [STEP 2] You will see RED square on the perspective view. You can adjust the box that you wish to render



Output Settings

The default setting is Screen, which shows the entire screen size. If you need a perspective view for presentations or print, your rendering size should be a different setting

- [STEP 1] Click Print on Render Settings
- [STEP 2] Change the resolution
 - 75 DPI Screen presentation
 - 150 DPI Regular print size
 - $\circ~~300$ DPI Fine print size
 - 600 DPI Not used
- [STEP 3] If you need to change image size, you can adjust the width and height on Crop Region Size

Render image

• [STEP 1] After your rendering process is done, you can save the image in the Revit project file for your future use. You can find the saved rendering under the project browser by clicking [Save to Project] on the [Rendering settings] window. You can include the rendered images on the sheets with a titleblock.



• [STEP 2] You can save the rendering with different formats by clicking [Export] under the image on [Render settings]. Typically, save JPG for photoshopping.

Render Background

- [STEP 1] You can add a background for your render [background]
 - The default setting can be Revit Sky, which can correspond with a specific date and time.
 - You are also able to add an image as a background.
 - You can set as a Transparent image. The file type must be PNG or TIFF file to save a transparent image for the background.

(CO 3) Edit render qualities

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=108

Change the render quality

• Draft – for a test render, but not recommended, because of lighting quality, reflection, bump, and refraction on finishesDraft-Render time 1min



- Med is recommended for a test render. Not the best quality, but it is acceptable
- High is recommended for a final render because of time and quality
- Best Although it produces the best quality, it is not recommended due to rendering time. Best-Render time 2hrs



(CO 4) Understand and make Cloud Renderings

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=108

Cloud rendering

Autodesk provides users with Cloud rendering. Design firms have great hardware to quickly render but Autodesk also provides its servers for rendering. The render quality is a bit better and faster than Revit rendering. Cloud rendering is a paid service, however, for educational purposes, it is offered for free.

- [STEP 1] Once your render settings are what you want to produce, click [Render in Cloud] from [View] tab, under [Presentation] panel
- [STEP 2] If you are a first time user of Cloud Render, you must Sign-in to an Autodesk account (email, PW, text code required)
- [STEP 3] Double-check your view name, output type (Still image), Render Quality, Image Size, Exposure
- [STEP 4] Click email when complete
- [STEP 5] Click Render



(CO 5) Save Cloud Rendering outputs

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=108

Get rendering outputs

- [STEP 1] Check the render results
- [STEP 2] Once you received the notification email, you can check the results in Render Gallery

File Architecture Structure Precast Inst	nt Annatate Analyze Massing & Site Cellaborate Yiew Manage Add-Ins Modify 🗇 •	
Modify View Visibility Filters Select +	The second secon	Switch (Core Tab Tale User Windows Inactive Views Views Interface Windows
Properties	X Exer 1 @ Properties Using 61 X	Project Browser - Earnes, House, Project, Yorgye X Level 1 - Color Fil Level 2 - Color Fil Level 2 - Color Fil Level 2 - Restrooms Rovd
SC Venix: venipective-Living-OT S Lin out in Graphics Detail Level Fine Parts Visibility Show Original Visibility/Graphics Over Edt		TSte Celling Plans Celling Plans Level 1 Level 2

- [STEP 3] The Render Gallery website will open, click View Project
- [STEP 4] Click the rendered thumbnail image > Click [Post-Processing] to change expose level and color balance



image credit: Autodesk cloud rendering

- [STEP 5] Click Download Icon > Click JPEG
- [STEP 6] If you need Transparent Background (for photoshop), click PNG



In Copyright 2014 Autodesk, Inc. All rights reserved. Privacy I Terms and Conditions I About I Privacy settings

English • 🔥 AUTODESK

image credit: Autodesk cloud rendering

Revit rendering vs. Cloud rendering

	Revit Rendering	Revit Cloud Rendering
Render time	Longer	Vary (shorter)
Hardware use	Your hardware	No hardware required
Control – Image size	Fully controllable	Few options
Control – Lighting	Manual	Automatic

SAVE the file before closing the application.

Save in a different location for the backup (e.g., a cloud folder)

References

Balkan Architect. (2018, April 12). Importing SketchUp Files into Revit Tutorial. Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4VFK-KEOMZc</u>

M.T.H Revit Tutorials. (2018, May 4). Convert SketchUp Models Into Revit (with Materials). Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=k_1g3077jxI</u>

Pedroeron. (2011, Oct 29). From 3ds Max to Revit without viewing Triangles edges. Retrieved October 23, 2020, from https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZghL7hRM-gM

PART THREE. ENSCAPE

Chapter 19. Introduction of Enscape

- Understand what is Enscape
- Control/navigate Enscape
- Create views
- Add model backgrounds
- Add Entourages
- Render images

Chapter 20. Edit Model and Materials

- Understand workflow, name of the material
- Use 3D Grass, Water, Reflective, textures
- Change to Architecture Maquette (White model, Outline) & Light mode
- Create Orthometric views

Chapter 21. Edit Lighting and Create Video

- Save, and load presets
- Set and adjust artificial lightings
- Create a walk-through video

Chapter 22. Edit Render outputs

- Export enlarged jpg files (Original, ID) for print
- Create Executable file
- Create Render Panorama image

Chapter 19. Introduction to Enscape



Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Understand what is Enscape
(CO 2) Control/navigate Enscape
(CO 3) Create views
(CO 4) Add model backgrounds
(CO 5) Add Entourages
(CO 6) Render images



At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



ULecture Contents

(CO I) Understand what Enscape is

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=110

Enscape is a commercial real-time rendering and virtual reality "plug-in" for Revit, Sketchup, Rhino, ArchiCAD, & Vectorworks.

It is mainly used in the AEC industry and is developed and maintained by Enscape GmbH, founded in 2013 and based in Karlsruhe, Germany.

Enscape features. Information from: Enscape website

- [FEATURE 1] Real-time walk-through CAYAS Architects was able to save 75% of their time to produce 3D visualizations by using Enscape
- [FEATURE 2] Virtual Reality
 - "A key add-in for Revit and Rhino workflow through to VR." Forster+Partners
 - "Now, with Enscape, our clients are amazed with what we show them. They are able to actually experience their project before it is even built. Enscape helps us to do a better job." **HMFH Architects**
- [FEATURE 3] Export functions "Design is always an iterative process, but Enscape has made it a dynamic one" **Turner Fleischer**
 - Batch export
 - 360-degree panorama
 - Video exports
 - Standalones an EXE file
- [FEATURE 4] Various visual settings
 - Clouds and backgrounds
 - Time of day change
 - $\circ~$ White model mode
 - Light analysis mode
 - Volume fog effects
 - Depth of Field option
 - Ortho views
 - BIM information
- [FEATURE 5] Asset library more than 1000 options

Other architectural rendering applications

- Vray
- Lumion 3D
- Twinmotion
- Corona

Read this article to learn more about other rendering applications in this link.

Download and install Enscape

• [STEP 1] Request Enscape educational license form the link

ENSCAPE	GALLERY COMMUNITY BUY FREETRIAL VIDEO TUTORIALS	surrowr Your Educational License
100	Student In Lacturer II University II FAQ	Enscape <support@enscape3d.com></support@enscape3d.com>
	PERSONAL DATA	Hi Yongyeon
1 Self file 🔀 📈	Educational Email	we're happy that you want to use Enscape. This is your educational license key:
		tgEgAV3eHVy4Z9Q8AEDb1EL21AE8AFAATGIjZW5zZWRUbz1Zb25neWVvbi8DaG8jRW1haWw9eW9uZ
	Later Herrise	It is valid for one semester - in other words 6 months. Please download the installer via this link:
STATE AN AV	Study Course"	Download Enscape now
AND AN USIN	Current Someaur*	Don't hesitate to contact our support team if you have any questions. Alternatively, you can also check our Forum, Blog or our Knowledgebase.
	CAD PROGRAM	Best,
	Aux Aux	Your Enscape Team
	Setting.	
		ENSCAPE"
	Other CAD	Enscape GmbH Erbprinzenstraße 27 76133 Karlsruhe Germany
	FL	TURE CREATC

- [STEP 2] Double click the downloaded Setup file.
- [STEP 3] Enscape requires four pre-installed programs, and you must install the necessary application (all free) to run Enscape.
- [STEP 4] In an advanced setup, you can install Enscape only for Revit. If you would like to use Enscape Sketchup and Revit, you can select all (Default setting).
- [STEP 5] Once the installation process is completed, open Revit. Note. Enscape is not stand-alone software. Enscape is a plug-in application in Revit, Sketchup, and Rhino. Therefore, you must have your application open in order to use Enscape.



• [STEP 6] Once you click Enscape Start, Enscape will ask for the license code to activate. Please copy and paste the codes from your email and activate it.

Required Software information can be found in this link.

System requirements information can be found in <u>this link</u>

- To check your graphic drivers (Windows)
 - Open your "This PC" on your Desktop
 - Mouse "right-click" > Click "Properties" > Click "Device Manager" on the left side of the panel > Find "Display adapters" and see the graphic drivers



(CO 2) Control/navigate Enscape

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=110

Open your project file and open a perspective that you want to make a rendered image in Enscape. Start Enscape

- [STEP 1] Click [Enscape] tab
- [STEP 2] Select the view that you would like to start on [Active Document] panel
- [STEP 3] Click [Start] on [Control] panel. Then it would be best if you waited a few seconds or minutes to launch the plug-in



Once Enscape is open, familiarize yourself with the navigation control

• [OPT 1] For the best practice, use dual monitors to see the Enscape real-time render on one monitor, your Revit project on the other monitor.



• [OPT 2] If you do not have two monitors, you can split your screen with two windows



• Use both keyboard and mouse to navigate Enscape

1 a				1		F
IT I	W E A S D Q Move Un / Down	Fast † Faster Ctrl Fly / Walk Space	Minimap M Video Editor K Collabora	BIM B	+ Shift Orbit Time of Day	

Adjust settings There are two types of settings.

• [OPT 1] General Settings

This setting is for the file and saves locations, mouse and keyboard control, licensing, etc.

1		5	1	F	4	BOD		100	A	ch.	160	200	38	
e live updates	Perspective-Living-01	. Enable	Take Screenshot	Export Create 3D V	ew Asset Library	Camera path Vi	Seo Editor (on/off) Bander Wider	Lendhi Furiquere	Manage Uploads	Place Sound Source	e Enable Sound	Seneral Settinge Vi	sual Settings Fe	redback About
								,		(on selected face)				
Control	Active Document	VR Headset		Tools			Video	Panorama	Manage Uploads	Sour	d	Setting		Misc
erties	XBP	erspective-Living-	01 X											# Project Browser - Eames_House,
														A B [0] Views (all)
30 View				and the second se		~	1 6 600 111 2 11							E Ploor Plans
6				A Long Long Long Long Long Long Long Long			AC USE							Level
	(Trown)		1 1	1 1			and the			-				Level 1 - Color Fill
iew: Perspective-	Living ~ Elli Edit type		11-11	1	_							10	LITT	Level 2 - Cales Ell
hics			and the second	111	-			and a second						Level 2 - Color Pil
ail Level	Fine					~		and the second		-		and the second se	The second se	Level 2 - Nestrooms
is Visibility	Show Original		ALC: NO	General	Settings				-	×				Root
bility/Graphics	Edit	k	1 1	W.	and a	_								Site
phic Display Op.	Edit	100		Customiz	tion	Input								Di Celing Hans
spline	Architectural			Input										Level 2
ault Analysis Dis.	None		N. Contraction			Mouse	Speed			1.00			8	Eero a
Path	2		1	Devices		Mouse	Separation -			1.50				Root
ts	2		100	Performa	ice.								20	E- SD views
View				Network		Mover	ient Speed			1.00				100-00-01
Region Visible	M					Marine	and Secondhing			0.00			180	Bernethe Heine
Clip Active				Licensing		- moren	and an address of [1]			0.00	-			Perspective-Uning
Clip Offset	53 10 107/256"		1000	Preference	es.	Spectal	tor Height			1.68m				E Devators (porong tier
re Box	None			Settions 1	anagement.	6 mar 10	W. M.			0.60-	1 A A	0		East.
on Box					a against	special	tor weight			0.504	1.2	10 24		Fearth.
ira.	*			Nevit							17 44	1.5		30901
dering Settings	Edit	100				input s	Qie				- 10 P.T.	32.4		Develops (Interior films
ed Orientation	[C1]						ert Mouse X-Axis				1.	100		E-I MMG-N
ection Mode	Perspective					T Inc	at Mours V. Anis				Difference sufficient	06 - 1		E-Restroom 1 - W
levation	5.0-					1_3 and	er woode i sous							- Cartinor ID Jalies Carti
et Elevation	5' 0"					litive	ert Gamepad Y-Axis				THE REAL PROPERTY.	1 1 1 1 1 1		C. Pertroom 1 / W
vera Position	Explicit					1 Inte	ert SpaceMouse					1000		SECTION A.A.
ity Data						0.0						The second		Renderings
v template	<none></none>		100			Key Bin	dings				A CONTRACTOR	1000		Perspective Living
v rearive	Perspective-saving-01									Desired 1		11/1/2		Perspective-Living-
endency	maependent					Screen	shot Hotkey SHIFT + F11			Crear	14 1 March			Perspective-Living-
on sheet											and the	V SI		1 Legends
ng	*										Sec.	and the second		Schedules/Quantities (al
se Hiter	Show All		10								1			() ED Sheets (all)
se	New Construction		- 1	1							10	-		a A100 - Ste Plan
											and a start	and the second second		E A101 - Floor Plan - Leve
		1.0												A101-C - Color filed - L
				1										E A102 - Floor Plan - Leve
														and the strengt real - part

• [OPT 2] Visual Settings

This setting is to render styles, image quality, camera settings, atmosphere, background, render settings, etc.

• Below are the settings that I used in the rendering below

entrol Active Document VR Headset	Tools	Video	Panorama	Manage Uploads	Sound	Settings	Misc	
es X 🖗 Perspective-Living	-01 ×						Project Browser - Eame B - [0], Views (all)	ns_Haune_Projec
ts	- ×	Visual Settings Presets		×	Visual Settings Presets		E Floor Plans	×
sering Image Atmosphere Capture	M S	Rendering Image Atmosph	ere Capture		Rendering Image	Atmosphere Capture		
e Loas		Contrast			White Background			- T
le None *		Highlights		- 0%	Intensity			30%
	1 inc	Shadows		0%	Height		0	200m
uto Exposure		Seturation		1025	Thurnination			
ure	50%	Color Temperature		7500K	Sun Brightness	0		20%
ction Two-Point ~		Ambient Brightness		50%	Night Sky Brightness	0		100%
of Field	5%	Effects			Shadow Sharpness			30%
no Focus		Motion Blur		- 0%	Moon Size			100%
Point	0.00m	Lens Flare		0%	Artificial Light Brightness		-0	150%
of View	103* Horizotal	Bloom -		0%	Horizon			
11		Vignette		0%	Source	Mountains *		
Draft Medium High	Uba	Chromatic Aberration		0%	Rotation	0		171*
	2	1			Wat			
		1		1	a Intensity			25%
					Direction Angle			0*
	the second se							
	6				Deute			
					Variaty			05
					Cirus Amount			05
					Conds Remount			

• the rendering preview



(CO₃) Create views

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=110

If you find a view while you navigate the real-time view from Enscape, you can create/ save a view

- [STEP 1] Once you find the view, stop to navigate
- [STEP 2] Click "Create 3D view" from the tools panel
- [STEP 3] Name the view
- [STEP 4] You can find the view that you just created on the Revit Project browser



• [STEP 5] To go back your views that you created, click the view name on the [Active Document] panel

(CO₄) Add model backgrounds

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=110

There are two options to change the model background

• [OPT 1] Change your Atmosphere on the visual settings to change the model backgrounds



• [OPT 2] Try to use Skybox. Find free skyboxes from this link

(CO 5) Add Entourages

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=110

Add Enscape models from Asset Library

- [STEP 1] Click Asset Library from the Tools panel
- [STEP 2] Search items by category or tags
- [STEP 3] Open a floor plan that you want to add the selected Enscape model to the Revit model
- [STEP 4] Select the model and place it on your floor plan. Use Move, Rotate commands to place the Enscape model. Also, confirm the positions on your perspective view.



• [STEP 5] Once the placement is done, press [ESC] to go back to the library

(CO 6) Render images

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=110

To make the final render

- [STEP 1] Click [Visual Settings] to set render size, file location, and file type.
- [STEP 2] Click [Capture] in your visual settings
- [STEP 3] Select the [Resolution] of the final rendering Typically Full HD for PPT presentation, Ultra HD for Print version presentation. If your render size is unique, please select Custom and set the pixel size.
- [STEP 4] Check [Show Safe Frame] to see the preview on your real-time view
- [STEP 5] Check [Export Object-ID, Material-ID, and Depth Chanel], Adjust the depth for the Depth Chanel
- [STEP 6] Set a render location to save your final render image file by clicking the Folder
- [STEP 7] Select a file format, typically [JPG]
- [STEP 8] Select the view name that you want to generate a final render
- [STEP 9] Click [Render image] from [Enscape] tab, under [Tools] panel, to get the final render image outside of the file. You may click "Render image (into the document)" to use the rendered image on your Revit document. This way, you can add your final render image to your sheet



Free resources

- <u>Link 1</u>
- <u>Link 2</u>

References

Garubba, K., & Garubba, S. (n.d.). Enscape Features. Retrieved October 22, 2020, from https://enscape3d.com/features/

Kar, S. (2018, May 14). Top 9 Best Rendering Software for Architects This Year. Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://www.architecturelab.net/best-rendering-software-for-architects/</u>

Free Enscape Student & Educational Licenses – Enscape[™]. (2020, June 05). Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://enscape3d.com/educational-license/</u>

System Requirements. (2020, September 14). Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://enscape3d.com/community/blog/knowledgebase/system-requirements/</u>

Free Sample Projects. (n.d.). Retrieved October 22, 2020, from https://enscape3d.com/free-sample-projects/

Reinold, H. (n.d.). Free Resources for Architectural Projects. Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://blog.enscape3d.com/</u> <u>free-resources-for-architectural-projects</u>

Chapter 20. Edit model & materials

Session Objectives

Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Understand workflow, name of the material
(CO 2) Use 3D Grass, Water, Reflective, textures
(CO 3) Change to Architecture Maquette (White model, Outline) & Light mode
(CO 4) Create Orthometric views

Session Highlights

At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



Z Lecture Contents

(CO I) Understand workflow, name of the material

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=112

To manage your file size for faster real-time rendering in Enscape, you would be better to reduce your file size

To apply a new material

- [STEP 1] Click [Material Browser] icon on [Material and Finish] category in the [Properties] palette
- [STEP 2] Click [Create New Material] on [Material Browser]
- [STEP 3] Rename the material that you created (Example. 001_XX_01_Description)
- [STEP 4] Check [Use Render Appearance] on [Graphic] tab

Select - Properties Clapboard Geor Mach/ Extrusion Decth (7 0 59/25*	· 日本版版 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Conception of the second secon	
Inspecies	Banaci Off Prompto theme (Range At) X Material Browser - 000, CPT (20 States (Range At) X Project Materialis All T - Nome Nome	Import of particular	 Propriet linear-t-lang.long.html Ren Ren Ren Ren Ren Ren Ren<!--</th-->

- [STEP 5] Click the [Appearance] tab on the [material browser]
- [STEP 6] Click [Replace] Icon
- [STEP 7] Click [Appearance Library]
- [STEP 8] Select a category
- [STEP 9] Click a specific material that you would like to apply, or change > click the [replace] icon
| operties | El Loui I @ Porquettive Linne, 41 X | | | | ₽ Project Browser | - Eames_House_Projec | ct, Yon |
|---|-------------------------------------|--|------|---|------------------------------------|---|--------------|
| R | | | 1 * | Asset Browser | A LE O, Mevs (a | <u>ال</u>
۲ | × |
| | Search | Q Identity Graphics Appearance + | | Search | | | 0 |
| niture (1) V (1) Entrol To | Onice Manufactory | 1= - 0 Genera(17) | (B)) | Appearance Library: Flooring: Carpet | | | 10 |
| trusion End 0' 0 59/256°
trusion Start 0' 0'
ork Plane // loor : 000_11_01
phics | Name
S Charles, legs | | | Document Assets | Asset Name
Pad - Waffied | ▲ Aspect
Appe | Type
Gene |
| Isability/Graphics Edit
sterials and Finishes
Material 000_CPT_02 | s, Charles, Seat | Information | C. | Cenamic File Concrete Generate File Default File Fabric | Purple-Smy | Appe | Gene |
| boategory «None»
Id/Void Solid | 000_Chair_sk_sest_01 | Color RGB 228 201 11 | 8 | Finish
Vi Hoong
Carpet
Vi Story | Red | Appe | Gen |
| | 000_CPT_01 | Image Fade | 100 | Winyl Wood | Rug - Braided | Appe | Gene |
| | 000_FE_01 | Glosoness
Highlights Non-Metallic
Reflectivity | • | Masonry | Rug - Hooked | Appe | Gene |
| | 000_Gypsum Wall Board | Transparency Cutouts | | Miscellaneous P Paint Parts Parts Roofing | Rug - Knotted | Appe | C∓ (|
| | 000_Steel ASTM A992_Black | ▶ ✓ Bump ▶ ■ That | | Siding
Sitesork
Sacre
Strucco | Saxony - Flower Pattern Blue-White | asset in the editor
with this asset.
Appe | Gene |
| | Home Name | □ i≣· ¥ | | Ya Wall Covering Ya Wall Covering Ya Wood Ya Wood PhysicalMaterial Structural PhysicalMaterial Structural | Saxony - Flower Pattern Colored | Appe | Gen |
| | m | <i>cc</i> | | PhysicalMaterial Structural | Savony - Herringbone | Acce | Ger |

- [STEP 10] On the [Material Browser], click the Duplication icon. This process is recommended to make a unique material
- [STEP 11] If the material image needs to be changed, click the image name. If the material size, location, or rotate, click image
- [STEP 12] Change the scale, offset, or rotate > Click done

xtrusion Depth 0.0.59/256					
	Carrow I Percentive Living-21 ×				Project Browser - Eames_House_Project
	Midanial Streenast - 000_CPT_02		7 ×	taniti.	A TELO, VIEWS (All)
	1000 C		. Texture	Editor	
1) ~ El la 1/1-	Search	Q Identity Graphics Appearance [+		20, 22,	
# End 0: 0.59/256*	Project Materials: All T •	IE • IC Rug - Knotted(1)			149 F 12
tart 0'0"	Name	2000		新設	
10001000,000	Charles here	8			
phica Fdit-			10- CT-	- 6 9	
Finishes #	_Charles_Seat	► Information		7 1 1	
1000,001,02	000_Chair_sk_back_01	▼ Generic		18	
<none></none>		Color RGE 85.75	57	1	
	000_Chair_sk_seat_01	image Context	Starting distantiation in	12,000	1-11-1/2
	000_CPT_01	representation of the second se	ina ina	Age .	
		Image Fade	100	Source Finishes Rooring Rug Knotted	- 24
	and a line	Glossiness	0 0	Brightness	C/Program Files (x86)/Common Files/Autodesk Shared/Ma
	000_FB_01	Highlights Non-Meta	fic ·	C Invert Image	analogical and so many and and so and and so and by
	[000 FB . 01-White	Reflectivity	* Trans	forms	
		F Transparency		Link texture transforms	
	000_Gypsum Wall Board	► ✓ Cutouts	* Pe	nition	
	000_Steel ASTM A992_Black	Self Illumination	2	Offset 0'-0'	÷×.
		▶ ✓ Bump		0.0.	1.14
	000,0,01	- F Tint	A	Rotation	0.00*
	and the second se		*50	ale	
	Mome Name			Sampia Sust 11-112"	Width and
				3-1-3/4"	- Heigh
	G · Q · E	44	10		

- [STEP 13] Update Information on the [Identity] tab
 - Description = Material tag information
 - Other information = Material schedule information

	Perpective Dring 81	c				Project Browser	Earnes_House_Proj	Hect, Ho
	_ Material Browser - 000_CPT_02			1 ×	Food Brooker	A I E ,0, Ment (al)	÷	ŝ
	Search	9	Identity Graphics Appearance +		Search			
(1) (1) (1) (1)	Project Materials: All Y -	12 ·	Name 000_CPT_02		Appearance Library: Flooring: Carpet			13
End 0' 0.59/256" Start 0' 0"	Name		Descriptive Information		Document Assets	Asset Name	 Aspect 	Typ
ne Floor: 000, IL, 01			Description CPT_02		Autodesk Physical Assets Appearance Library			
	_Charles_legs		Class lextile	14	Fin Ceiling ▶ Fin Ceramic	Purple-Gray	Appe_	Ge
and Finishes	a _Charles_Seat		Comments Area Rug		Concrete			
ta	# 000_Chair_sk_back_01		Resolut Information		Fig Fabric	Red	Appe_	G
category «None» 5/Void Solid			Manufacturer		+ Te Rooms			
			Model		The Stone	Furthern Banded	Aree	6
	000_CPT_01		Cost		S Vinyl	NON	- Abre	~
	000_CPT_02		URL		• Glass			
	000,F8,01		Revit Annotation Information	1.1	Masonly	Rug - Hooked	Appe_	Ģe
	Int an average		Keynote		Metallic Paint	1.100		
	000_F8_01-White		Mark		Miscelleneous	Rug - Knotted	Appe_	Ge
	000_Gypsum Wall Board				Plant Plantic			
	000_Steel ASTM A992_Black				Resting Siding	Saxony - Flower Pattern Blue-White	Appe	Ge
	000 75.01				Stewark			
	- works	*			Stucco			
	Minut	0 ⊫• ∛			► The Well Paint	Sauoty - Plower Pattern Colored	Appe_	04
	Name				PhysicalMaterial_Structural			
					PhysicalMaterial Structural	Saxony - Herringbone	Appe	1

- [STEP 14] Update Information on the [Graphics] tab
 - Shading, Check [Use Render Appearance]
 - Update [Surface Pattern] if needed
 - Update [Cut Pattern] if needed

and in			* Parts	Presson - France Marine President Viscon
			8 B 8	Views (all)
R	Material Browser - 000_CPT_02		? X interpret	7 X
and the second second		Q lidenth, Graphics Appearance +	Search	9
ndure(1)	R Project Materials All T +	in - * Shading	Appearance Library: Flooring: Carpet	i≡•
trusion End 0' 0 59/256" trusion Start 0' 0"	Name	Use Render Appearance	Document Assets Asset Name	Aspect Type "
phics ible	R	Tercentracy 0	V Appearance Library	Appe_ Gene
terials and Finishes terials and Finishes aterial 000_CPT_02	R Charles, Seat	▼ Surface Pattern ▼ Foreground	Million Cencrete	
nhy Data R Scategory «None» id/Void Solid	8 500,Cheir,sk,back,01	Pattern Sand - Dense	Pill Fabric Red Vie Finish	Appe_ Gene
	000_Chair_sk_sent_01	Color Dit 120 120 120 Alignment Texture Alignment	Ru Capet Ru Score The Score Rug - Braided	Appe_ Gene
		T Background	Wood	
	00.FR.01	Color D26 120 120 120	Rug - Heoked	Appe Gene
	000_FB_01-White	▼ Cut Pattern ▼ Forestraund	The Metallic Paint	Acor Gene
	000_Gypourn Wall Board	Pattern (none)	Paint Paint Paint Paint	
	000_Steel ASTM A992_Black	Color Doce 120 120 120	Saxony - Flower Pattern Blue-W	Ihite Appe_ Gene
	000_11_01	Pattern (none)	Store Sacco → Wall Covering	4 444 544
	Home Name	Color 838 120 120 120	Ping Wald Paint Ping Wood Ping PhysicalMaterial Structural	
			PhysicalMaterial Structural Surgery, Hemothese	Area Gana

- [STEP 15] Update Information on the [Appearance] tab
 - Information name = Should be unique
 - Generic = Image or color
 - Reflectivity
 - Transparency
 - Self-illumination Create self-illuminated material like a light source
 - Bump Create a bumpy texture on a surface

	Carrier Barrier	× mpm				Project Browser ⇒ 'O' Vews (all	Earnes_House_Proj	ect_Ho
	Material Browser - 000_CPT_02			7 ×	Amin Browner			3
	[Proves	0	Literative Counting Assessments		Search		-	-
 ψ) [1] 1=1 1µµ 	Search	4	Dentry Graphics Appearance +	0.0	Amountaine Ubrane Deather Council			10
0' 0.59/256"	Project Materials: All T +	E.	Kug - Knottes(1)	30.43	Document Assets	Accest Manual		
0 0°	Name		10.5000		1 Favorites	Addet Halfine	 Aspect. 	191
Fleor: 000, 1L,01	-				Appearance Library	and the second se		
	_Charles_legs		Contraction of Contraction		The Coling	Purple-Gray	Appe_	G
hics Ede.	Charles Sant			·	Concrete			
DOD_CPT_02			* Information		Se Default			
	000_Chair_sk_back_01		Name Rug - Knotted(1)		Finish	Red	Appr	. 0
<none></none>	15		Description Generic material.		+ Fa Flotring			
	(00, Chair, sk, seat, 0)		Keywords AutoCAD, Finishes, F	ooring.Rug.Knotted,	Ta Stone	F		
	000_CPT_01		▼ Generik		The Take	Rug - Breided	Appe_	G
	100		Color BGB 85 75 57		Wood			
	000_CPT_02		Street and a street and a	A DESCRIPTION OF	+ Ta Glass			
			intrage and a second second		Masonry	Rug - Hooked	Appe	G
	(000)48_01		Finishes Flooring Rug	Knotted jpg	Metal			
	000_FB_01-White		Image Fade	100	Mange	1007		
			Glossiness	0 -	Miscellaneous	Rug - Knotted	Appe-	9
	000_Gypsum Wall Board		Highlights Non-Metallic		Plastic			
	000 Steel ASTM A992 Black		Reflectivity		Roofing	Course Diversi Diversi Diversi Di		
			> Transparency		Stework	sarony - Hower Pattern Due-White	white-	0
	000_TL_01		➤ ✓ Cutouts		Stone			
			Self Illumination		Mail Covering	Sauger - Dower Pattern Colored	here	
	Allows	□ ≔. ♦	* v Barno		Wall Paint		chho-	
	France	Name	In the second second	CONTRACTOR OF THE OWNER.	Hand Physical Material Structural			
			may and a second	and the second	PhysicalMaterial_Structural	Saugay - Herringhone	Acos	
	🖾 · 🚭 · 🚍	<<	Finishes Floreing Rus	Kontted Burns inn	PhysicalMaterial Structural	and the second second		

• [STEP 16] Click [Apply] > click [ok]

For material, Enscape uses most of Revit material properties



Materials in Revit can be found at this link

Use sample materials from this link

(CO 2) Use 3D Grass and Water

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=112 Enscape requires a special name for Water and Grass.

The material name must include [water] for water materials.



The material name must include [grass] for grass materials.



(CO 3) Change to Architecture Maquette (White model, Outline) & Light mode

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=112

Designers use white models to discuss the shape or form of space.

- [STEP 1] Open [visual settings]
- [STEP 2] Change mode to [White]

Pause live updates Perspe	at Elmes House Proj	6 8 a	-			
Pause live updates Perspe			💰 🛛 🖾 🖾			Se St 19 🚺
	ective-Living-02	Enable Take Screenshot Export Create 3D Vie	w Asset Library Camera path	Video Editor (on/off) Residen Video Resola Panca	Manage Uploads Place Sound Source Enable Sou	nd General Settings Visual Settings Feedback About
				*	(on selected face)	
Control	Active Document	VR Headset Tools		Video Panoram	a Manage Uploads Sound	Settings Misc
0		O Rest of Land And And And And And And And And And A				a Barbar Barrar Street Barbar Barbar Barrar
Properties	[^]	gr respective-tiving-siz A				
TO New		🐓 Visual Settings	- 🗆 ×	💙 Enscape - View: "Perspective-Living-02"		- 0, ×
10 View Demostive Living	www. Fill Edit Type	Presets			And Design to the second se	and the second s
Gampies	· · · · ·	Rendering Image Atmosphere Canture				
Detail Level Fine	. 1	second week countries of the				
Parts Visibility Shou	w Original	Style				
Visibility/Graphics	(dt.	Adding T	3.94			
Graphic Display Op	Edit	outimes	2010			the second se
Discipline Coor	ordination	Mode Vhite V	Ð			
Default Analysis Dis Non-	ne			the second		and the second se
Sun Path 🗹		Camera		C. B. Branner	and the second se	A CONTRACTOR OF THE OWNER OWNER OF THE OWNER OWNE
Extents	2	Auto Exposure		and the second s		
Crop View		Francisco	5/96	Statistics in		
Crop Region Visible				ALC: NOT THE REAL PROPERTY OF	The second se	
Far Clip Active	× 31.00	Projection Two-Point *				
Far Cip Offset 2012	2 2 1/32	Depth of Field	5%			
Scope Box None	ne					
Camera		Auto Focus		ALL ALL AND ALL ALL ALL ALL ALL ALL ALL ALL ALL AL	a second second	and the second se
Rendering Settings	Ede.	Focal Point	0.00m			
Locked Orientation		Extension M	05*	Distance of the second s		and the second se
Projection Mode Persy	spective		Horizontal			
Eye Elevation 4' 8.'	8.23/128*			North K-9		
Target Elevation 4' 6.	6 29/32"	Rendering Quality		Statement of the second se		and the second statement of th
Camera Position Expli	sict	Draft Medium High	Ultra			Contraction of the local division of the loc
Identity Data	2					
View Template	<none></none>					
View Name Persp	spective-Living-02					
Dependency Indep	ependent					
Title on sneet						
Phase Ether	- 11					
Dhare New	Construction					

The designer also uses **light mode** to show lighting intensity. You can see where hot spots are and where the areas that need more lighting.

- [STEP 1] Open [visual settings.]
- [STEP 2] Change the mode to [Light view.]
- [STEP 3] You may uncheck [Automatic Scale] for manual



(CO 4) Create Orthometric views

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=112

To create **an isometric view** via Enscape, you need an isometric view on your Revit file.

• [STEP 1] Create a Default 3D view by clicking the [3D view] from the View] tab, under [Create] panel



- [STEP 2] Use [section box] and hide in view by element or category to hide unnecessary items
- [STEP 3] Synchronize the view by selecting [view name]
- [STEP 4] Change the Projection to [Orthographic] from [Visual Settings] under [Rendering]



• [STEP 5] You may change the [render style mode] on your [visual settings]

wuse live updates 150	of Eline? D-view-02	Enable Take Screenshot Export Create ID View Asset Librar	y Deserve path Velach	1921 - 1925 - 1924 Ana tao atti Tandar Video - Sandri Armana A	Manage Uploads Place Sound Source Enable So (on selected face)	und General Settings Visual Settings Feedback About	
Control	Active Document	VR Headset Tools	v	ideo Panotama	Manage Uploads Sound	Settings Misc	
		Carrier Crock and					ile as finders in
operses	^	C windersweitrungen R po-wew-os v				 Project proviser - cames, r in (0, Views (all) 	nouse, project, to
D 3D View		Visuali Settings	* *	Enscape - View: "ISO-view-02"		- 0	×
D View: ISO-view-02	v 🗄 Edit Type	Rendering Image Atmosphere Capture				1	
raphics Juni Crale 3	R = 11-01	Stude					
Icate Value 11 IC	3						
Detail Level	ine	Outlines	50%			O CALL	
Parts Visibility SI	how Original	Mode White Y	0		ALC C		
/sibility/Graphics	Edit						
iraphic Display Op	Edit	Camera					
iscipline C	oordination	Auto Puno une			1	XI XPII	
ow Hidden Lines B	y Discipline					In s in	
efault Analysis Dis N	lone	Exposure	\$7%				
in Path		Projection Orthographic *					
tents		Death of Fold	~	1		V ///	
rop View		Liebeu or Mera	404 8		1 12 10	1 /24	
rop Kegion Visible		M. Auto Focus	_		AL NY		bion)
Cla Actua	1	Focal Point	0.00m	1		The second	
e Clis Offset	alar ar	10001001		No.	A 10	ALL REAL	
one flox N	lone	Field of View	0.	125	1 1	11 - 49	
ection Box	2		Honzontal	SLOV		112	
nera	2	Rendering Quality		1 ALAS	Phi /	12	pn)
endering Settings	Edit	Draft Medium High Ultra		Sparts.	ALV D	A L	
cked Orientation				1 Show		5 / 1/	
ojection Mode 0	hthographic			Le an		111	9
e Elevation 33	2' 4 99/128"			(Star		La la	
rget Elevation 3	1' 9.217/255*		1	81/	2 10 10	11	
amera Position A	djusting			AK- S			
ntity Data					5 2 1		2
ew Template	<none></none>				3 m CLES		1
ow Name IS	sci-view-02		-				1
ipendency In	holependent			10	A Real		
tie on sneet					i and		
asing have Direct (1)	R		1				
hate N	lev Construction				0/		1
11000	err construction						rel 1

• [STEP 6] You also may change views using numbers on the keyboard For a floor plan, press [5]

1	X D Perspective-Living-82 D ISO-view-82 Q ISO-view-83 X	Project Browser - Earnes, House, Project
u Meeta	Visial Sterring:	- Sor Plans Level 1 Level 1 Level 2
and (i)	Rendering Image Atmosphere Capture	Level 2 - Color Fill Level 2 - Restrooms
	Fog	Roof
	Intensity 0%	ving Plans
	Height Dm	- Level 1 Level 2
	Business	Roof
	Su licitum 185	3D View 1
	Nieht Sty Boatmass	ISO-view-01
		150-view-03
	Moon Size 100%	Perspective-Living-01 Perspective-Living-02
	Antical Light Brightness 200%	vations (Building Elevation
	Horizon	North
	Source Clear +	West
	Rotation 0° -	Nations (Interior Elevation)
		E-Restroom 1 + W
	Minuty 235	ctions (Building Section) S-Restroom 1 - W
	Direction Angle 0*	SECTION A-A'
		Perspective-Living-01_1
	Course P	Perspective-Living-01_2 Perspective-Living-01_3
	Vicinity 20 Vicini	ends
		edules/Quantities (all)
		4 5 6 00 - Site Plan

References

Materials in Revit. (2020, July 16). Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://enscape3d.com/community/blog/knowledgebase/revit-material-parameters/</u>

Free Enscape Student & Educational Licenses – Enscape[™]. (2020, June 05). Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://enscape3d.com/educational-license/</u>

Chapter 21. Edit lighting and create a video

Session Objectives

Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Save and load presets(CO 2) Set and adjust artificial lightings(CO 3) Create a walk-through video

Session Highlights

At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



ULecture Contents

(CO I) Save and load presets

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=114

The saving and loading presets are very helpful if you need to render multiple images. You will save a lot of time and produce consistent image qualities.

You can save the visual setting that you modified

- [STEP 1] Click Presets
- [STEP 2] Click Save Preset > Save to Project or Save to File
- [STEP 3] Name the preset



• It is recommended to save three types of preset [Perspective-Day, Perspective-Night, and Isometric]

To load a preset that you already saved

- [STEP 1] Click Presets
- [STEP 2] Click load Preset > Load from Project, or you may load from the file
- [STEP 3] Select a preset that you would like to load > Click OK

5	Presentine (Joint D1 X		Project Browser - Earnes_House_Pro
			 Level 2 Level 2 - Color Fill
30 View *	🔮 Vissal Settings -	X De Frenhanne - Viener "Will accessed 10"	- 17 195
	Distant	Complex raise conversion	
Perspective-Living ~ Ht Edit Type	ries		
*	Rendering Image Atmosphere Capture		4.
Nel Fine	Intensity V Load Preset X	0% -	
Graphics Edit	Default Settings		
Display Op., Edit.,	- Earnes House Project Yongyeon Cho 21		
e Architectural	Remination (100 College Day)		
Analysis Di., None	Iso-color-bay		
	Sun angetness Perspective-Day ISO-Color-Day		
*	Night Sky Enghtness Perspective-Night	875	10-print
non Visible Id	Shadow Sharpness		19-02
Active			Devation
Offset 53' 10 187/256"	Moon Size	3105	
ox None	Artificial Light Brighti	200%	
Box.			and the second sec
E.	Horizon		leating leating
ng Settings Edit	Source		
on Mode Democracy	Botation		N N
ation 5' 0'	These south		ection)
evation 5' 0"	Wind		×
Position Explicit	Intensity	300	
lata R	and and		- 01
nplate «None»	Direction Angle		19-01, he-01
me Perspective-Living-01	If the renderer window is open, the selected preset will		19-01.3
Independents	Clouds be previewed there.		
8	Density Cancel	66%	(all)
ter Show All	Variety	45	
New Construction			
	Cirrus Amount	245	Level 1
	Contrails	" A KXIL 7	A 102 - Row Plan - Level 2
	Localtude -	9000m	B A102-C - Color filled - Lever
			A401 - RCP - Level 2

(CO 2) Set and adjust artificial lightings

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=114

For better artificial lighting simulation

- [STEP 1] Use a night-time scene time (sunset or sunrise would work as well)
- [STEP 2] Turn off "Auto Exposure" in Enscape visual settings
 - Exposure Brightness = 60% ~ 80% (Nighttime scene)
 - Exposure Brightness = 51%~53% (Day time scene)
- [STEP 3] The render quality should be High or Ultra
- [STEP 4] Vignette effect = 0%
- [STEP 5] Artificial Light Brightness = 100% ~ 150%

Once you change the time of day, you must click "create 3D view" to save that time of day.

- [STEP 1] Click [Create 3D view] from the [Enscape] tab
- [STEP 2] Name the view

Architecture Structure Steel	Precast Systems Insert Annotate Analyze Massing & Site Collabor	rate View Manage Add-Ins Enscape**	Modify D+	
Manuar of Fanne Alamar Ta	. 6 🐔 🖬 🗑 🗸	800 800 400	· · ·	n = = = ii
Parme live undates Descention Lives 01	Enable Take Creater bot France Create 20 View Lines Library	Comera nath Video Editor (con/off) Porting	Manana Lislowite Blace Sound Source Fr	able Gunard General Settinger Visual Settinger Feedback About
A server use obvious the tibective - thand-of	time as straight the time to the bertoon	y canada parti indeo contri fort col iniciali i	(on selected face)	and sound the manage stand seconds recovery moves
Control Active Document	VR Headset Tools	Video	Panorama Manage Uploads Sound	Settings Misc
Properties X	@ Perspective-Living-01 X			Project Browser - Eames House Project Yongy
				A Level 2
O source				- Level 2 - Color Fill
C so see	💙 Vitila) Settinga	A CONTRACT	0 // //	Level 2 - Restrooms
	Diversity	C Inscare	View: "Perspective-Living-01"	×
3D View: Perspective-Living ~ Eh Edit Type			The subscore energy of	0 /1
Graphics #	Rendering Image Atmosphere Capture		The state of the s	
Detail Level Fine	Shile .			A COMPANY AND A
Vicibility Snow Original				
Graphic Display On. Edit.	Outlines	20%		
Discipline Architectural	Mode None *			
Default Analysis Di None		and the second se		the second se
Sun Path	Camera			
Extents R	Auto Exposure			
Crop View	Dennes	767		Make
Crop Region Visible	copourt	in the second se		and the second se
Far Clip Active	Projection Two-Point *			ion)
Stone Box Note	Depth of Field	5%		
Section Box	The sector of th		and the second se	the second se
Camera R	(Y) Hoto Focus			
Rendering Settings Edit.,	Focal Point	0.00m	and the second se	
Locked Orientation	Field of View	90*		
Projection Mode Perspective		Horizontal	And the second se	
Eye Elevation 5' 0"	Rendering Outline	- Ite	A CONTRACTOR OF A CONTRACTOR O	The second
Camera Position Explicit	Draft Medium High Ulb		Alternation and a second secon	- CARLES AND
Identity Data ±				A REAL PROPERTY OF A REAL PROPER
View Template «None»			1 Martin and the second state	
View Name Perspective-Living-01				
Dependency Independent				
Title on Sheet				
Phasing #		-	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
Phase New Construction			100 B 100 B	
inter controlition		3	The management	
			THE PARTY OF THE P	
		0 11	IND CHART	a more courmes cite 1
		11	2 x x x	I A102 - Floor Plan - Level 2
		H	/ /	A102-C-Coortined-Level 2
		2	/ / /	A B-A402 - RCP - Level 1

You may need to adjust the value of Illuminance on the "Initial Intensity" of lighting properties.

File Architecture Structure Steel P	Precast Systems Insert Annotate Analyze Massing & Site Collaborate View Manage Add-Ins Enscape"	Modify Lighting Fixtures 💿 x	
Select + Properties Clipboard Get	annuty Modely View Measure Creat Syde	ans.	
Missing Human Porties Light Group:	«None» v Edu		
Properties	@ Perspective Ustan Bt X		Project Browser - Eames_House_Project_Yongyeo
Period Units (2007)	Prests Prests Rodering Inage Abrosphere Capture Syle 20% Outlines 20% Cennes 20% Depth of Float 5% Post Secure 76% Post Secure 76% <th>Type Flagorine X Parity: Downleyt-Incread Can Under Type: Increased Can Increased Can Increased Can Decision Canada Can Increased Can Increased Can Decision Canada Can Increased Can Increased Can Decision Canada Can Increased Can Increased Can Decision Can Can Increased Can Increased Can Decision Can Can Can Increased Can<th>A Level 2 - Settores B Litt A Level 2 - Settores B Litt A Level 3 - Settores B Level 3 B Level 3 B Level 3 B Level 3 B D Views B D V</th></th>	Type Flagorine X Parity: Downleyt-Incread Can Under Type: Increased Can Increased Can Increased Can Decision Canada Can Increased Can Increased Can Decision Canada Can Increased Can Increased Can Decision Canada Can Increased Can Increased Can Decision Can Can Increased Can Increased Can Decision Can Can Can Increased Can <th>A Level 2 - Settores B Litt A Level 2 - Settores B Litt A Level 3 - Settores B Level 3 B Level 3 B Level 3 B Level 3 B D Views B D V</th>	A Level 2 - Settores B Litt A Level 2 - Settores B Litt A Level 3 - Settores B Level 3 B Level 3 B Level 3 B Level 3 B D Views B D V
		< <preview addy<="" cancel="" ok="" td=""><td></td></preview>	

Find/use IES lighting from this link

Use/adjust self-illumination materials for lighting sources



(CO 3) Create a walk-through video

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=114

To create a video path with scenes

- [STEP 1] Click "Video Editor" from the Enscape tab
- [STEP 2] Click "Add keyframe" Once you click "Add keyframe," the setting will be saved



- [STEP 3] Change the scene by moving the scene
- [STEP 4] Once you think the next scene is the right position (recommend foot walk to see the scene from the same height), click "Add keyframe," then you can see the second frame is added.
- [STEP 5] You may check the preview to see how this works.



• [STEP 6] Repeat step 3 to 5 to create a complete path for a video



• [STEP 7] Click a [frame] and change the settings (time of the day, duration of the movement, camera field of view, and camera position) and click "Apply" to apply the changes



• [STEP 8] You can repeat other frames to change the settings



[STEP 9] You can get out of the keyframe editor by clicking Back, Click Preview to see the results



To save a video path

•

- [STEP 1] Click "Save Path" from the Enscape tab
- [STEP 2] Make a unique name for the path



To render the video

- [STEP 1] Load camera path by clicking "Camera Path" > "Load path" from the Enscape tab
- [STEP 2] Change video size from Visual Setting Resolution (HD is recommended), the quality can be [Web], FPS must be [30]
- [STEP 3] Click "Render Video" to render the path



Note. To render the video, it will take a while because of the pictures that the video renders. Typically, if you render a 1-second video, Enscape renders 30 frames. If one frame takes 10 seconds to render, a total 1-second Video takes 300 seconds to render. Enscape does a great job because Revit rendering takes 5 minutes to render one frame.

References

Free Enscape Student & Educational Licenses – Enscape[™]. (2020, June 05). Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://enscape3d.com/educational-license/</u>

Chapter 22. Edit render outputs

Session Objectives

Upon completing this session, students will be able to:

(CO 1) Export enlarged jpg files (Original, ID) for print(CO 2) Create Executable file(CO 3) Create Render Panorama image

🔻 Session Highlights

At the end of the session, students can create the graphics below.



ULecture Contents

(CO I) Export enlarged jpg files (Original, ID) for print

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=116

Refer to [lecture 14.1, CO 2], for the final render image process

If you need a special size of render image, change the resolution to Custom and change the values from Capture in Visual

Settings



You can use the ID images and Depth map to adjust the rendering in photoshop.



(CO 2) Create Executable file

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=116

To export the EXE file

EXE file type is for a presentation, it does not require any programs like Revit, nor Enscape, material links, and lighting/ render settings.

• [STEP 1] Click [Start] to launch Enscape and confirm your model is ready for export.

- [STEP 2] Select view to start
- [STEP 3] Add information (Icon, Title, Load first screen) from [Customization] on [General Settings]



• [STEP 4] Click Export > Exe Standalone

Note Architecture Structure Structure Present System prioritie Annotatie Person low update Paracema-Lixong-01 - Evalue E	Analyze Massing & Ste Collaborat	te Vew Manage Add-Ins Enscape ⁴⁴ Mi Sou Est Camera path Video Editor (on/off) Video	odity D + Render Panceama Manage Uploads Panceama Manage Uploads	Place Sound Source Enable Sound Ge Ion selected Face) Sound	eneral Settings Fer Settings	etheck About Misc
Properties X Properties Arr 3D View - - - Bowner - - -	E Web Standalone Exe Standalone Seport the curve you can share it your CAD softw Prens F1 for me	e en project as an is excluded a dancalene. This issy, it shift offsets, even if they don't have Enskape as ware installed.	644		EDit Th	

• [STEP 5] Save > Name the file name and wait until the file is created



(CO 3) Create Render Panorama image

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <u>https://iastate.pressbooks.pub/</u> visualgraphiccomm/?p=116

To create Render Panorama

(This option creates only one 360-degree rendering image with QR code at the same time)

- [STEP 1] Select a view to create a 360-degree rendering image (The center of a room/space)
- [STEP 2] Click Enscape Start. Confirm your Projection mode is [Perspective]
- [STEP 3] Click Render Panorama. The render takes time because this panorama needs to render 16 images (for the normal setting)



• [STEP 4] Automatically saved on [Manage Uploads], open [Manage Uploads]



[STEP 5] Click the rendered image > Upload the rendered image in ENSCAPE CLOUD

- [STEP 6] Click the file to open the web browser or use a QR code
- [STEP 7] And the rendered image file and the QR code can be saved in JPG



Tips from Enscape using Panorama view

Please read <u>this link</u> for using the panorama view

Please read this link for an advanced level using panorama images

References

Panorama & Cardboard. (2020, July 20). Retrieved October 23, 2020, from <u>https://enscape3d.com/community/blog/knowledgebase/panorama-cardboard/</u>

Appendix: Ancillaries

- File package for a student Download
 - Base drawings
 - Source models
 - Material images
- File package for an instructor Request to the author via email (<u>yongyeon@iastate.edu</u> or <u>choyongyeon1983@gmail.com</u>) with documentation, they are a faculty member.
 - Base drawings
 - Source models
 - Material images
 - AutoCAD, Revit, and Enscape models

Recommended lecture schedule and to-do list for each session:

Week	Session	Contents
01	01	 Introduction of AutoCAD What is the application & 4 different AutoCAD How to install the application Understand AutoCAD interface – Ribbon, Panels, Model space, Layout tabs, Status bar, & Properties AutoCAD setup tips – Options, Unites, Workspace Types and structure of drawings in Auto CAD – Floor plan, RCP, Elevation, Section, & Details Input commands and understand different selections Understand basic drawing tools – Origin, Line, Move, Rotate, Copy Attach image/PDF/CAD and Adjust the scale Set the project folder, Save the file, and backups
	02	 Draw Floor Plans Understand Layers – Name, Line type, Thickness, & Color Draw centerlines – Line, Ortho, & Offest Draw exterior/interior walls, floor, millwork & openings – Polyline, Spline, Circle, Rectecgul, Object Snap, Mirror, Fillet, Trim, Extend, Array, & Match Properties
02	01	Finalize (2) Floor plans layout (1st floor & 2nd floor for the House) – Walls, Floor, Millwork, & Openings
	02	 Create Dimensions and Components Add/Edit dimensions (in model space) – Dim, & Dimension style Add/Edit blocks from AutoCAD Tool Palette & Other sources – Door, Window, Column, Plumbing, Furniture & Equipment Create custom blocks – Custom furniture
03	01	 Draw Elevations and Sections Draw a section Draw an elevation from the Floor plan Add/Edit Text & Annotation (in model space) – MText, Text style, M leader, & Multileader Style
	02	Add components (Window, Column, Plumbing, Furniture, & Equipment) in (2) Floor plans (Follow the wall layout and millwork, design your own furniture layout) Finalize (1) Section (House-Section A-A') and (1) Elevation (refer House-Section C-C') – with furniture, dimensions, and annotations
04	01	Draw Ceiling Plans • Draw Ceiling Plans from Floor plan • Add/Edit Hatch • Create Legends

Set Sheets

02

01

- Understand the Model space and Paper spaces
- Set a new layout Page layout, & Plot styles
- Set views in Paper spaces Defpoints, Scaling
- Add/Edit/Draw a titleblock

Symbols and prints

05

- Add/Edit symbols in Paper spaces drawing title, elevation symbol and section letters, north arrow
- Printing

Add Hatches in the floor plans, sections, and ceiling plans

02Finalize (2) Ceiling plans (1st floor & 2nd floor for the House) – design your own lighting layout for the
House

Create a PDF drawing set

Introduction to Revit

06

- Purpose of using Revit How & Why Interior Design uses Revit
- Install Revit
 - Understand Project Templates Default and Own
 - Save Revit file Set the project folder and backup file
 - Open an existing project file
 - Keyboard shortcuts
 - Understand the User Interface Toolbar, Properties, Drawing area, Option bar, and Project Browser

Create a Site

02

01

- Understand the site plan and information
- Set the project location and understand building base point
- Find GIS information
- Add & Edit Site Topo surface, roads, side works, property line, building pod, surrounding buildings, and trees
- Define true north and project north

Set Grids, Levels, Dimensions, & Building columns

07

- Import CAD drawings Floor plans, building elevations, and sections
- Adjust and verify the scale
- Create and modify grids and levels
- Create plan views Floors and ceilings
- Create columns with dimensions
- 02

01

Finalize the (1) site (including terrain, roads, side works, property line, surrounding buildings, and trees)

Work on building columns

Add/Edit Beam, Walls, & Curtain Walls

08

- Add/Edit Beam
- Create walls ٠
- Edit walls wall properties Wall thickness, Wall details, & Finishes
- Edit/add wall properties Wall opening, wall sweep Add/Edit Curtainwalls, Mullions, & Panels

Understand Visibility settings, Add/Edit Floor & Ceiling,

02

01

02

01

01

- Understand View template, visibility graphics •
- Understand View range
- Add/Edit Floors & Floor Properties
- Add/Edit Ceilings & Ceiling Properties

Add/Edit Stairs, Rails, & Roof

09

- Add/Edit Stair three types of staircases
- Add/Edit Railing
- Add/Edit Roof •

Work on building beams, walls, floors, ceilings, stairs, railings, and roofs

Finalize (2) Floor plans (1st floor & 2nd floor for the House) with dimensions

Add/Edit Windows, Doors, Lighting, Furniture, Tags, & Sheets

10

- Understand the concept of family file •
- Add/Edit Doors and Windows
- Add Tags
- Add/Edit Lighting fixtures
- Add/Edit Titleblocks •
- Insert Plan views and symbols North arrow and graphic scale •

Add/Edit Model-in-Place Components & Edit Family

02

- Add/Edit Furniture families
- Add/Edit Model-in-place components Custom casework
- Add/Edit a New Family Furniture •

Add/Edit Elevation, Section, Detail, Text, Annotation, & Rooms

11

01

- Add/Edit Elevations & Sections Adjust crop region
- Add/Edit Detail views
- Add Texts & Annotations
- Add/Edit Rooms, Room tags, Room separators
- Add/Edit a color fill scheme

Work on furniture, casework, lighting, doors, and windows

Finalize (2) Ceiling Plans (1st floor & 2nd floor for the House) – design your own lighting layout for the House

02 Finalize (2) Furniture Plans and Floor Floor Finish Plans(1st floor & 2nd floor for the House) - design your own furniture layout and finish choice for the House

Finalize (2) Elevations (Decide your own views for the House)

Finalize (2) Sections (House-Section A-A', House-Section C-C') - No furniture, Follow the given drawing

Add/Edit Views, Lighting, & Materials

- Set perspective views
 - Set Isometric views •
 - Edit Views Graphic Display styles
 - **Test Render**
 - Set sun •
 - **Edit Artificial lighting**
 - Add/Edit materials
 - **Render material managements**

Create Revit Rendering, Revit Clouding Rendering

02

01

- Insert other types of files Sketchup, AutoCAD
 - Advanced render settings
 - Edit render qualities
- Understand and make cloud renderings ٠
- Save Rendering outputs •

Finalize (2) Perspective views (Revit rendering and Revit Cloud rendering) - (Decide your own views for the House)

01 Finalize (1) Isometric view (Decide your own views for the House)

Create a PDF drawing set

Introduction of Enscape

- 02 Understand what is Enscape
 - Control/navigate Enscape
 - **Create views**
 - Add model backgrounds
 - Add Entourages
 - Render images

12

13

Edit Model and Materials

14

- Understand workflow, name of the material Use 3D Grass, Water, Reflective, textures ٠
- •
- Change to Architecture Maquette (White model, Outline) & Light mode
- Create Orthometric views •

Edit Lighting and Create Video

02

01

01

- •
- Save, and load presets Set and adjust artificial lightings Create a walk-through video
- •

Edit Render outputs

15

- Export enlarged jpg files (Original, ID) for print Create Executable file •
- •
- Create Render Panorama image •

Finalize (3) Perspective views ((2) Enscape rendering + Photoshoped, (1) Lighting analysis) (Decide your own views for the House)

Finalize (1) QR code for Panorama rendering 02

Finalize (1) Video (30 seconds)

Create a PDF drawing set